new interchange

English for international communication

Jack C. Richards

with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor

(CÓ CHÚ GIẢI TỪ VỰNG)

NEW EDITION

FULL ANSWERS

TAPE SCRIPTS

students

DH OG Hà Nội

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

interchange

Jack C. Richards

with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor (CÓ CHÚ GIẢI TỪ VỰNG)

> student's dworkbook

Giới thiệu & chú giải : MINH THU

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

LỜI GIỚI THIỆU

New Interchange I là giáo trình mới được chỉnh sửa, bổ sung, cập nhật về mặt nội dung, bố cục, cách trình bày từ cuốn Interchange I do tác giả Jack C Richards biên soạn, được nhà xuất bản Trường Đại học Cambridge phát hành lần đầu tiên năm 1991. New Interchange được coi là một trong những giáo trình phổ biến nhất, thành công nhất trên thế giới.

Với những thông tin cập nhật, các tình huống thiết thực với đời sống hàng ngày, giáo trình không những tạo cơ hội để người học nâng cao vốn kiến thức mà còn qua đó giúp người học thể hiện được những quan điểm, ý kiến của bản thân mình về những chủ để liên quan tới nhà trường, công việc, xã hội, giải trí... bằng tiếng Anh.

Giáo trình gồm 16 bài học và 4 bài ôn tập với các nội dung chính sau:

Snapshot: Phần này cung cấp một số thông tin mới, một số từ vựng và giới thiệu chủ đề thảo luận.

Conversation: Phần này giới thiệu ngữ pháp mới thông qua những cuộc đàm thoại hàng ngày.

Grammar focus: Trọng tâm ngữ pháp của bài học được giới thiệu một cách rõ ràng, dễ hiểu.

Fluency exercise: Với các bài tập thực hành cặp, thực hành nhóm, đóng vai, bạn có cơ hội luyện tập các tình huống trong bài.

Pronunciation: Nội dung này tập trung vào các đặc trưng về trọng âm, dấu nhấn, ngữ điệu của tiếng Anh trong giao tiếp.

Listening, Writing, Reading: Mục đích của các nội dung này là phát triển kỹ năng nghe, đọc và viết của bạn

Word power: Phần này giúp bạn nâng cao vôn từ vựng tiếng Anh và cách sử dụng từ vựng trong các ngữ cảnh khác nhau.

Interchange activity: Các bài tập trong phần này chiếm vị trí trung tâm của giáo trình, cho phép bạn phát triển toàn diện 4 kỹ năng : nghe - nói - đọc - viết.

Unit summaries: Cuối mỗi bài học sẽ có phần tổng kết bao gồm từ vựng, các cụm từ và ngữ pháp bổ sung của từng bài.

Chúng tôi hy vọng rằng cuốn sách sẽ đem lại cho bạn những giờ học tiếng Anh thú vị và bổ ích.

Chúc các bạn thành công!

Người giới thiệu Minh Thu

Introduction

THE NEW EDITION

New Interchange is a revision of Interchange, one of the world's most successful and popular English courses. New Interchange incorporates many improvements suggested by teachers and students from around the world. Some major changes include many new Conversations. Snapshots, and Readings; more extensive Grammar Focus models and activities; a greater variety and amount of listening materials; extensive changes to the Teacher's Edition and Workbook; and additions to the Video.

New Interchange is a multi-level course in English as a second or foreign language for young adults and adults. The course covers the four skills of listening, speaking, reading, and writing, as well as improving pronunciation and building vocabulary. Particular emphasis is placed on listening and speaking. The primary goal of the course is to teach communicative competence, that is, the ability to communicate in English according to the situation, purpose, and roles of the participants. The language used in New Interchange is American English; however, the course reflects the fact that English is the major language of international communication and is not limited to any one country, region, or culture. Level One is for beginners and takes students from the beginning to lowintermediate level.

Level One builds on the foundations for accurate and fluent communication already established in the *Intro* Level by extending grammatical, lexical, and functional skills. The syllabus covered here in Level One also incorporates a rapid review of language from the *Intro* Level, allowing Student's Book 1 to be used with students who have not studied with *Intro*.

COURSE LENGTH

Each full level of New Interchange contains between 70 and 120 hours of class instruction time. For classes where more time is available, the Teacher's Edition gives detailed suggestions for Optional Activities to extend each unit. Where less time is available, the amount of time spent on Interchange Activities, Reading, Writing, Optional Activities, and the Workbook can be reduced.

Each split edition contains approximately 35 to 60 hours of classroom material. The Student's Book, Workbook, and Student's Audio Cassettes or CDs are available in split editions.

■ COURSE COMPONENTS

The Student's Book contains 16 six-page units. The exercises in each unit are grouped into two topical and/or functional sections: these sections are referred to as "cycles" in the teaching notes. There are four review units. There are a set of communication tasks called Interchange Activities and Unit Summaries at the back of the book.

The full-color Teacher's Edition features page-by-page instructions interleaved with reproductions of the Student's Book pages. The instructions contain detailed suggestions on how to teach the course, lesson-by-lesson notes. numerous follow-up suggestions for optional tasks and Optional Activities, complete answer keys, and transcripts of the listening activities. Located at the back of the book are instructions for the Interchange Activities, an Optional Activities Index and Additional Optional Activities, answers to Workbook exercises, four photocopiable achievement tests for use in class. transcripts for the tests, and test answer keys. A noninterleaved, black-and-white Teacher's Manual is also available.

The Workbook provides a variety of exercises that develop students' proficiency with the grammar, reading, writing, spelling, and vocabulary presented in the Student's Book. Each six-page unit follows the same teaching sequence as the Student's Book. Most Workbook units also contain "review exercises" that recycle teaching points from previous units in the context of the new topic. The Workbook can be used for classwork or for homework.

The Class Audio Cassettes or CDs are for use in the classroom. They contain natural-sounding recordings of the Conversations, Grammar Focus models. Pronunciation exercises, and Listening activities in the Student's Book, and the listening exercises for the tests. A variety of native-speaker voices and accents, as well as some nonnative speakers of English, are used. Exercises that are recorded are indicated with the symbol ...

The Student's Audio Cassettes or CDs are for self-study by students. They contain recordings of the Conversations, Pronunciation exercises, and Grammar Focus models from the Student's Book. They are available in split editions only

The Video is designed to review and extend the topics and language presented in the Student's Book. It contains sixteen entertaining, dramatized sequences based on the language and vocabulary in the Student's Book. There are also five authentic documentary sequences. The accompanying Video Activity Book provides comprehension and conversation activities, as well as language practice. The Video Teacher's Guide provides thorough instructional support, a complete answer key, and photocopiable transcripts of the video sequences.

The CD-ROM (available in Mac and PC formats) is intended to be used in conjunction with the Student's Book to review and practice the language learned in class. The CD-ROM can be used on a home computer or in a language laboratory. At the core of each of the sixteen units is a video sequence taken from the New Interchange Video, and some of the activities are based on ones found in the Video Activity Book. In total, the CD-ROM contains over 150 activities; students do the activities they want to do at the touch of a button. In addition, there are four tests to check students' progress.

The **Placement Test** helps teachers and program administrators place their students at the most appropriate level of *New Interchange*. The booklet contains the listening, reading, and grammar sections on photocopiable pages, and instructions for administering the oral placement exam. The listening section is accompanied by a cassette

The set of four **Lab Cassettes** and the accompanying **Lab Guide** from the first edition of *Interchange* can be used in conjunction with the *New Interchange* series.

APPROACH AND METHODOLOGY

New Interchange teaches students to use English for everyday situations and purposes related to school, social life, work, and leasure The underlying philosophy is that learning a second or foreign language is more rewarding, meaningful, and effective when the language is used for authentic communication. Throughout New Interchange, students are presented with natural and useful language. In addition, students have the opportunity to personalize the language they learn, make use of their own knowledge and experiences, and express their ideas and opinions.

KEY FEATURES

Adult and International Content New Interchange deals with contemporary topics that are of high interest and relevant to both students and teachers. The topics have been selected for their interest to both homogenous and heterogenous classes.

Integrated Syllabus New Interchange has an integrated, multi-skills syllabus that links topics, communicative functions, and grammar. Grammar – seen as an essential component of second and foreign language proficiency and competence – is always presented communicatively, with controlled accuracy-based activities leading to fluency-based communicative practice. In this way, there is a link between grammatical form and communicative function. The syllabus is carefully graded, with a gradual progression o teaching items.

Enjoyable and Useful Learning Activities A variety of interesting and enjoyable activities provides thorough individual student practice and enables learners to apply the language they learn. The course also makes extensive use of information-gap tasks; role plays; and pair, group, and whole class activities. Task-based and information-sharing activities provide a maximum amount of student-generated communication.

WHAT EACH UNIT CONTAINS

Snapshot The Snapshots graphically present interesting real-world information that introduce the topic of a unit or cycle, and also develop vocal ulary. Follow-up questions encourage discussion of the Snapshot material and personalize the topic

Conversation The Conversations introduce the new grammar of each cycle in a communicative context and present functional and conversational expressions.

Grammar Focus The new grammar of each unit is presented in color boxes and is followed by controlled and freer communicative practice activities. These freer activities often have students use the grammar in a personal context.

Fluency Exercise These pair, group, whole class, or role-play activities provide more personal practice of the new teaching points and increase the opportunity for individual student practice.

Pronunciation These exercises focus on important features of spoken English, including stress, rhythm, intonation, reductions, and blending.

Listening The Listening activities develop a wide variety of listening skills, including listen-

ing for gist, listening for details, and inferring meaning from context. Charts or graphics often accompany these task-based exercises to lend support to students.

Word Power The Word Power activities develop students' vocabulary through a variety of interesting tasks, such as word maps and collocation exercises. Word Power activities are usually followed by oral or written practice that helps students understand how to use the vocabulary in context.

Writing The Writing exercises include practical writing tasks that extend and reinforce the teaching points in the unit and help develop student's compositional skills. The Teacher's Edition demonstrates how to use the models and exercises to focus on the process of writing

Reading The reading passages use various types of texts adapted from authentic sources. The Readings develop a variety of reading skills, including reading for details, skimming, scanning, and making inferences. Also included are pre-reading and post-reading questions that use the topic of the reading as a springboard to discussion.

Interchange Activities The Interchange
Activities are pair work, group work, or whole
class activities involving information sharing and
role playing to encourage real communication.
These exercises are a central part of the course
and allow students to extend and personalize
what they have practiced and learned in each unit.

Unit Summaries Unit Summaries are located at the back of the Student's Book. They contain lists of the key vocabulary and functional expressions, as well as grammar extensions for each unit.

■ FROM THE AUTHORS

We hope that you will like using New Interchange and find it useful, interesting, and fun. Our goal has been to provide teachers and students with activities that make the English class a time to look forward to and, at the same time, provide students with the skills they need to use English outside the classroom. Please let us know how you enjoy it and good luck!

Jack C. Richards Jonathan Hull Susan Proctor

luthors' Acknowledgments

s great number of people contributed to the developnent of *New Interchange*. Particular thanks are wed to the following:

the reviewers using the first edition of Interchange n the following schools and institutes - the insights nd suggestions of these teachers and their students ave helped define the content and format of the ew edition: Jorge Haber Resque, Centro Cultural Brasil-Estados Unidos (CCBEU), Belém, Brazil: ynne Roecklein, Gifu University, Japan; Jary Oliveira and Montserrat M. Djmal, Instituto Brasil-Estados Unidos (IBEU), Rio de Janeiro, Brazil; Liliana Baltra, Instituto Chileno Norte-Americano, Santiago de Chile; Blanca Arazi and he teachers at Instituto Cultural Argentino Norteamericano (ICANA), Buenos Aires. Argentina; Mike Millin and Kelley Seymour, James English School, Japan; Matilde Legorreta, Kratos, S.A. de C.V., Mexico D.F.; Peg Donner, Ricia Doren. and Andrew Sachar, Rancho Santiago College Centennial Education Center, Santa Ana. California, USA; James Hale, Sundai ELS, Japan. Christopher Lynch, Sunshine College, Tokyo,

Japan, Valerie Benson, Suzugamine Women's College, Hiroshima, Japan; Michael Barnes. Tokyu Be Seminar, Japan; Claude Arnaud and Paul Chris McVay, Toyo Women's College, Tokyo, Japan; Maria Emilia Rey Silva, UCBEU, São Paulo, Brazil; Lilia Ortega Sepulveda, Unidad Lomoa Hermosa, Mexico D.F.; Eric Bray, Kyoto YMCA English School, Kyoto, Japan; John Pak, Yokohama YMCA English School, Yokohama, Japan, and the many teachers around the world who responded to the Interchange questionnaire

The editorial and production team: Suzette André, Sylvia P. Bloch, John Borrelli, Mary Carson, Natalie Nordby Chen. Karen Davy, Randee Falk, Andrew Gitzy Pauline Ireland, Penny Laporte, Kathy Niemczyk, Kathleen Schultz, Rosie Stamp, and Mary Vaughn

And Cambridge University Press staff and advisors: Carlos Barbisan, Kate Cory-Wright, Riitta da Costa. Peter Davison, Peter Donovan, Cecilia Gomez Colin Hayes, Thares Keeree, Jinsook Kim. Koen Van Landeghem, Carine Mitchell, Sabina Sahni, Helen Sandiford, Dan Schulte, Ian Sutherland, Chris White, and Ellen Zlotnick

Plan of Book 1

Title/Topics	Tit	le/	To	٥i	cs
--------------	-----	-----	----	----	----

Functions

Grammar

UNIT 1

PAGES 2-7

Please call me Chuck. Introductions and greetings; names and titles; countries and nationalities

Introducing yourself; introducing someone; checking information; asking about someone; exchanging personal information

Wh-questions and statements with be; yes/no questions and short answers with be; contractions; subject pronouns; possessive adjectives

UNIT 2

PAGES 8-13

How do you spend your day? Occupations, workplaces, and school; daily schedules; clock time

Describing work and school; asking for and giving opinions; talking about daily schedules

Simple present Wh-questions and statements; time expressions: at, in, on, around, until, before, after, early, and late

UNIT 3

PAGES 14-15

How much is it? Spending habits, shopping, and prices; clothing and personal items; colors and materials Talking about prices; giving opinions; talking about preferences, making comparisons; buying and selling things

Demonstratives: this, that, these, those; one and ones; questions: how much and which; comparisons with adjectives

UNIT 4

PAGES 20-25

Do you like jazz? Music, movies, TV programs; entertainers; invitations and excuses; dates and times Talking about likes and dislikes; giving opinions; making invitations and excuses

Simple present yes/no and Wh-questions with do; question: what kind; object pronouns; modal verb would; verb + to + verb

REVIEW OF UNITS 1-4

PAGES 25-27

UNIT 5

DACES OF TO

Tell me about your family. Families and family life

Talking about families and family members; exchanging information about the present; describing family life

Present continuous yes/no and Wh-questions, statements, and short answers; determiners: all, nearly all, most, many, a lot of, some, not many, a few, and felw

UNIT 6

PAGES 34-39

How often do you exercise? Sports and exercise; routines

Asking about and describing routines and exercise; talking about frequency; talking about abilities

Adverbs of frequency: always, almost always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom, hardly ever, almost never, never; questions with how: how often, how much time, how long, how well, how good; short answers

UNIT 7

PAGES 40-45

We had a great time! Free-time and weekend activities; vacations

Talking about past events; giving opinions about past experiences; talking about vacations

Past tense yes/no and Whquestions, statements, and short answers with regular and irregular verbs; past tense of be

UNIT 8

PAGES 46-51

How do you like the neighborhood? Stores and places in a city; neighborhoods; houses and apartments

Asking about and describing locations of places; asking about and describing neighborhoods; asking about quantities

There is/there are; one, any, some; prepositions of place; questions: how much and how many; countable and uncountable nouns

REVIEW OF UNITS 5-8

PAGES 52-53

Listening/Pronunciation	Writing/Reading	Interchange Activity PAGE 106 UNIT 1
Recognizing formal and informal names; listening for personal information Intonation of clarification	Writing questions requesting personal information "Meeting and Greeting Customs": Reading about greeting customs	"Getting to know you": Collecting personal information from classmates
questions	Dyserrbing past avperlences, man	PAGE 107 UNIT 2
Listening to descriptions of jobs and daily schedules Unstressed words	Writing a description of an occupation "The Daily Grind": Reading about students with part-time work	"Common ground": Finding similarities in classmates' daily schedules
	Assembly Some Block Stillser.	PAGES 108 and 109 UNIT 3
Listening to people shopping; listening for items, prices, and opinions Linked sounds	Writing a comparison of prices in different countries "Shop Till You Drop": Reading about different kinds of shopping	"Swap meet": Buying and selling things
from to home outgoing a grant provincial of	Talkung dang besi sesah unudis T	PAGE 110 UNIT 4
Identifying musical styles; listening for likes and dislikes; listening to invitations Question intonation	Writing invitations and excuses "The Sound of Music": Reading about musicians from around the world	"What an invitation! What an excuse!": Making up unusual invitations and excuses
		REVIEW OF UNITS 1-4
So, acciden too and withers modal	Expressing likes and disclosed	PAGE 111 UNIT 5
Listening for family relationships; listening to information about families and family life	Writing a description of family life "The Changing Family": Reading about an American family	"Family facts": Finding cut information about classmates' families and family members
Blending with does	Describing recording making a company common services of the common	PAGE 112 UNIT 6
Listening to people talk about free-time activities; listening to routines; listening to descriptions of sports participation	Writing a description of favorite activities "Smart Moves": Reading about fitness for the brain	"Fitness quiz": Interviewing about fitness habits
Sentence stress	nethations, e certain and rensing.	PAGES 113 and 114 UNIT 7
Listening to descriptions and opinions of past events and vacations Reduced forms of did you	Writing a postcard "Vacation Postcards": Reading about different kinds of vacations	"Vacation photos": Telling a story using pictures
and name sequence goods reserved	an rearrain temeros gargaestiz	PAGE 115 UNIT 8
Listening for locations of places; listening to descriptions of places in neighborhoods Reduced forms of <i>there is</i> and	Writing a description of a home "City Scenes": Reading about neighborhood life in cities around the world	"Neighborhood survey": Comparing two neighborhoods
there are		Will be the Secretary of the Secretary o
*		REVIEW OF UNITS 5-8

Title/Topics WHT 9 PAGES 54-59	Functions 1!	Grammar	
What does he look like? Appearance and dress; clothing and clothing styles; people	Asking about and describing people's appearance: identifying people	Questions for describing people What look like, how old, what color, how long, how tall; modifiers	
UNIT 1D PAGES 60-65	lİ	with participles and prepositions	
Have you ever ridden a camel? Past experiences; unusual events	Describing past experiences; making plans; exchanging information about past experiences and events	Present perfect yes/no questions and statements; regular and irregular past participles; already and yet; present perfect and past	
UNIT 11 PAGES 66-71		tense contrast	
It's a very exciting city! Cities; hometowns; countries	Asking about and describing cities; asking for and giving suggestions; talking about travel and tourism	Adverbs and adjectives; conjunctions: and, but, however, and though; modal verbs can and should	
UNIT 12 PAGES 72-77			
It really works! Health problems; medications and remedies	Talking about health problems; asking for and giving advice; making requests; asking for and	Infinitive complements; modal verbs can, could, and may for requests	
REVIEW OF UNITS 9-12 PAGES 78-78	giving suggestions		
UNIT 13 PAGES 80-85			
May I take your order, please? Food and restaurants	Expressing likes and dislikes; agreeing and disagreeing; ordering a meal	So, neither, too, and either; modal verbs would and will for requests	
WHT 14 PAGES 86-91			
The biggest and the best! World geography; countries; he environment	Describing countries; making comparisons; expressing opinions; talking about distance and measurements	Comparative and superlative of adjectives; questions with how how far, how big, how high, how deep, how long, how hot, and how cold	
UNIT 15 PAGES 92-97		and now cota	
m going to see a musical. nvitations; leisure-time activities, elephone messages	Talking about plans; making invitations; accepting and refusing invitations; giving reasons; taking and leaving messages	Future with present continuous and be going to; messages with tell and ask	
UNIT 16 PAGES 98-103			
ac ruthite	Exchanging personal information; describing changes; talking about plans for the future	Describing changes with the present tense, the comparative, the past tense, and the present	
REVIEW OF UNITS 13-16 PAGES 104-105		perfect; verb + infinitive	
INIT SUMMARIES PAGES S-2-S-17			
PPENDIX			

Listening/Pronunciation	Writing/Reading	Interchange Activity PAGES 116 and 118 UNIT 4
Listening to descriptions of people; identifying people Contrastive stress	Writing a description of someone "Hip-Hop Fashions": Reading about clothing styles	"Find the differences": Comparing two pictures of a party
		PAGE 117 UNIT 19
Listening for time and place of an event; listening to descriptions of events Pronunciation of have	Writing a description of an unusual activity "Taking the Risk": Reading about unusual or dangerous sports	"Lifestyles survey": Finding out about a classmate's lifestyle
		PAGE 119 UNIT
Listening to descriptions of cities and hometowns; listening for incorrect information Pronunciation of can't and shouldn't	Writing a description of an interesting city "Famous Cities": Reading about cities around the world	"City guide": Creating a city guide
		PAGE 120 UNIT 12
requests in a drugstore	Writing about a home remedy "Grandma Knows Best!": Reading about home remedies	"Talk radio": Giving advice to callers on a radio program
		REVIEW OF UNITS 9-12
		PAGES 121 and 122 UNIT 12
Listening to people make dinner plans; listening to restaurant orders Stress in responses	Writing a restaurant review "To Tip or Not to Tip?": Reading about tipping customs	"Are you ready to order?": Ordering a meal in a restaurant
		PAGE 123 UNIT to
Listening to a TV game show; listening for information about	Writing about an interesting or beautiful place	"How much do you know?": Taking a quiz on general knowledge
a country Intonation in questions of choice	"Things You Can Do to Help the Environment": Reading about the environment	PAGE 124 UNIT 1
Tistoning for information about	Writing a request to give a message	"What are you going to do?":
invitations; receiving telephone "Ways to Keep	"Ways to Keep Phone Calls Short": Reading about telephone manners	Finding out about classmates' weekend plans
		PAGE 125 UNIT I
Listening to descriptions of changes; listening to hopes for the future	Writing about future plans "The Future Looks Bright": Reading about the plans of three successful	"Unfold your future!": Planning a possible future
Reduced form of to	students	REVIEW OF UNITS 13-1
		UNIT SUMMARIE
		APPEND

Please call me Chuck.

CONVERSATION Introducing yourself

Xin goi tôi là Chuck.



CHECKING INFORMATION

Kiểm tra thông tin

A Match the questions in column A with the responses in column B. Listen and check. Then practice with a partner. Give your own information.

1. How do you pronounce your last name?

2. Excuse me, what's your first name again? b. It's Mandel, with the accent on "del."

3. How do you spell your last name?

4. What do people call you?

a. C-H-A-N-G.

c. Well, everyone calls me Chuck.

d. Oh, it's Amy.

B Group work Make a list of names and nicknames for your group. Introduce yourself with your full name. Use the expressions above.

A: Hi! I'm Joseph Block. Please call me Joe.

B: OK, Joe. And what's your last name again?

A: It's Block.

call (v) meet (v)

pronounce (v)

[ko:1]

[mi:t] [pro'nauns] goi

gặp gỡ phát âm

3 NAMES AND TITLES

Tên và danh xưng

A Use a title with a last name to address someone formally.



	TO DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF	0.000
	Ø	
Ms.	V	
Miss	on √ • 10	aw 🔲
Mrs.		
	Mr. Ms. Miss	Ms. Miss

Use a first name or nickname without a title to address someone informally.



f B Listen to people talk to Chuck Chang, Elizabeth Mandel, and Amy Kim. Do they address them formally (F) or informally (I)?

1....... 2....... 3....... 4....... 5....... 6.......

4 CONVERSATION Introducing someone Dàm thoại - giới thiệu ai đó

A Listen and practice.

Tom: Paulo, who is that over there? he Paulo: Oh, that's my father! And that's

my mother with him.

Tom: I'd like to meet them.

Paulo: Mom and Dad, this is Tom Hayes. Tom, these are my parents.

Tom: Pleased to meet you, Mr. and

m: Pleased to meet you, Mr. and Mrs. Tavares.

Mrs. Tavares: Nice to meet you, Tom.

Paulo: My parents are here from Brazil.

They're on vacation.

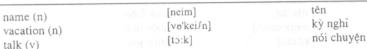
Tom: Oh, where are you from in Brazil?

Mr. Tavares: We're from Rio.

B Group work Take turns introducing a partner to othera.

A: Juan, this is Maria. She's from Argentina.







5

Wh-questions and statements with be

What's your name? Where are you from?	My name is Chuck. I'm from Taiwan.	Contractions	Subject pronouns	Possessive adjectives
Who is that? What's her name? Where is she from? Where are you from?	His name Is Tom. Her name Is Amy. She's from Korea. We're from the United States.	You are = You're He is = He's She is = She's It is = It's We are = We're	you he she it	my your his her its
Who are they? What are their names? Where are they from?	They're Amy's parents. Their names are Mr. and Mrs. Kim. They're from Korea.	They are = They're What is = What's	VOII	our your their

For a list of countries and nationalities, see the appendix at the back of the book.

A Complete this conversation. Then compare with a partner.

Yoko: Rich, who are the two women

over there?

Rich: Oh, names are Lisa

and Kate.

Rich: Hi, Kate. This Yoko.

..... from Japan.

Yoko: Hello. Nice to meet you.

Kate: Good to meet you, Yoko.

Lisa: And name Lisa.

Yoko: Hi, Lisa.

Rich: Lisa and Kate from Canada.

Yoko: Oh? Where you from in Canada?

Kate: from Toronto.

B Complete these questions. Then practice with a partner.

- 1. A: Who I that?
 - B: That's Rich.
- 2. A: he from?
 - B: He's from Los Angeles.
- 3. A: his last name?
 B: It's Brown
- 4. A: the two students over there? B: Their names are Lisa and Kate.
- 5. A:..... they from? B: They're from Canada.

C Group work Write five questions about your classmates. Then take turns asking and answering your questions.

Who is she?
Where is Su Hee from?

student (n)
nationality (n)
country (n)

['stju:dnt] [,næ∫o'næliti] ['k∧ntri] sinh viên quốc tịch quốc gia

4

6 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Which greetings are typical in your country? Can you name a country for each greeting?

Source: Brigham Young University, Center for International Studies

CONVERSATION Asking about someone Dàm thoại: Hỏi về ai đó

A Listen and practice.

Sarah: Hi, Tom. How's everything? Tom: Not bad. How are you? Sarah: Pretty good, thanks.

Tom: Sarah, this is Paulo. He's from Brazil.

Sarah: Hello, Paulo, Are you on vacation? Paulo: No, I'm not. I'm a student here.

Sarah: Oh, are you studying English?

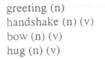
Paulo: Well, yes, I am. And engineering, too.

Sarah: Are you and Tom in the same class?

Paulo: No, we aren't. But we're on the same volleyball team.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

Where is Sarah from?



['gri:tin] ['hændseik] [bou] $[h \land g]$

chào hỏi cái bắt tay/bắt tay sự cúi chào/cúi chào sư ôm chặt/ôm chặt

Yes/No questions and short answers with be

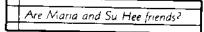
Are you on vacation? Are you a student?	No, I'm not. I'm a student. Yes, I am.
is Sarah from the United States? Is Sarah from Australia?	No, she isn't . (No, she' s no t.) She' s from Australia. Yes, she is .
Are you and Tom in the same class? Are you and Tom on the volleyball team?	No, we aren't. (No, we're not.) We're on the same volleyball team. Yes, we are.
Are Mr. and Mrs. Tavares American? Are Mr. and Mrs. Tavares Brazilian?	No, they aren't. (No, they're not.) They're Brazilian. Yes, they are.
<u> </u>	

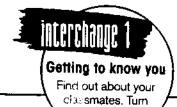
A	Complete these conversations.	Then	practice	with a	partne
д	Complete these conversations.	Then	practice	with a	partr

1.	A: you from the United States? B: Yes, I from Chicago.
2.	A: Rosa in English 101? B: No, she
3.	A:you and Monique from France? B: Yes, wefrom Paris.

B Pair work Read the conversations in Exercises 4 and 7 again. Then answer these questions. For questions you answer "no," give the correct information.

- 1. Are Tom and Paulo on the baseball team?
 2. Are Mr. and Mrs. Tavares on vacation?
 3. Are Mr. and Mrs. Tavares from Mexico?
 4. Is Paulo from Brazil?
 5. Is Paulo on vacation?
- **C** Group work Write five questions about your classmates. Then take turns asking and answering your questions.





to page IC-2.

9 LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to these conversations and complete the information about each person.

First name	Last name	Where from?	Studying?
1. Joe		the United States	
2	Vera		engineering .
5. 77 mm 1 20	N##	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

		
classmate (n)	[ˈklaːsmeit]	ban cùng lớp học
information (n)	{,info'mei∫n	thông tin
turn to (v)	[to:n tu]	chuyển sang
person (n)	[ˈpəːsn]	người

10 READING

Meeting and Greeting Customs

How do you think the people in these countries greet each other?

here are many different greeting customs around the world.
Here are some.



Chile

People usually shake hands when they meet for the first time. When two women first meet, they sometimes give one kiss on the cheek. (They actually "kiss the air.") Women also greet both male and female friends with a kiss. Chilean men give their friends warm abrazos (hugs) or sometimes kiss women on the cheek.



Finland

Finns greet each other with a firm handshake. Hugs and kisses are only for close friends and family.



The Philippines

The everyday greeting for friends is a handshake for both men and women. Men sometimes pat each other on the back.



Korea

Men bow slightly and shake hands to greet each other. Women do not usually shake hands. To address someone with his or her full name, the family name comes first, then the first name.



The United States

People shake hands when they are first introduced. Friends and family members often hug or kiss on the cheek when they see each other. In these situations, men often kiss women but not other men.

A According to the article, in which country or countries are the following true? Check (✓) the correct boxes.

	Chile	Finland	the Philippines	Korea	the U.S.
 People shake hands every time they meet. Women do not shake hands. Women kiss at the first meeting. Men hug or pat each other on the back. Women kiss male friends. The family name comes first. 	0 00000	00000		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

B Pair work How do these people greet each other in your country?

- 1. two male friends
- 2. a male and female friend
- 3. two strangers
- 4 two female friends

4 two temate friends			
think (v) custom (n) male (n) female (n) stranger (n)	[0ink] ['kAstom] [meil] ['fi:meil] ['streind3o]	suy nghĩ phong tục nam nữ người lạ	7

2

How do you spend your day?

1 SNAPSHOT

Ngày của bạn ra sao?

Thông tin nhanh

Work and School Days



Average number of working hours per week Average number of paid vacation days per year Number of national holidays Number of school days per year Hours of instruction in school per day

la del et
Brazil	the United Kingdom	South Korea	the United States	
44	44	48	40	d
20-21	27	20	12	
10	8	10	11	ľ
182	192	222	178	in should
4.5	5	4.5	5.5	-

4.5 5.5

Information compiled from The New York Times.
Digest of Educational Statistics, and interviews.

Talk about these questions.

Which country would you like to work in? Why? Where would you like to be a student? Why?

2 WORD POWER Jobs

Từ vưng - nghê

A Complete the word map with jobs from the list.

architect
receptionist
company director
flight attendant
supervisor
engineer
salesperson
secretary
professor
sales manager
security guard
word processor

	Service occupations
architect	flight attendant
\ \	
	Jobs
	3008
Management positions	Office work
ompany director	receptionist
	Tarographia owa co
	s hayar (grande om)x

B Add two more jobs to each category. Then compare with a partner.

WORK AND WORKPLACES

Công việc và nơi làm việc

A Look at the pictures. Match the information in columns A, B, and C.



a salesperson

a chef

a carpenter

a receptionist a nurse

a flight attendant

in a hospital in a department store in an office

for a construction company

builds houses cares for patients answers the phone cooks food serves passengers sells clothes

B Pair work Take turns describing each person's job.

for an airline

in a restaurant

"She's a salesperson. She works in a department store. She sells clothes."

CONVERSATION Describing work

B

Đàm thoại: miêu tả công việc

A 🗐 Listen and practice.

Jason: Where do you work, Andrea?

Andrea: I work for Thomas Cook Travel. Jason: Oh, really? What do you do there?

Andrea: I'm a guide. I take people on tours to countries in South America, like Peru

Jason: That sounds interesting!

Andrea: Yes, it's a great job. I love it. And what

do you do?

Jason: I'm a student, and I have a part-time

job, too.

Andrea: Oh? Where do you work? Jason: In a fast-food restaurant.

Andrea: Which restaurant? Jason: Hamburger Heaven.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

- What does Jason do, exactly?
- 2. How does he like his job?



spend (v)

architect (n) receptionist (n)

secretary (n)

professor (n) security guard (n) [spend] ['a:kitekt] [ri'sepsonist] ['sekrotri] [pro'feso] [si'kjuoroti'ga:d]

tiêu dùng kiến trúc sư lễ tân thư ký giáo sư người bảo vệ

Simple present Wh-questions and statements (1996)

What do you do?	I'm a student, and I have a part-time job. I work at/in a restaurant. I go to the University of Texas. I like it very much.	I/You	He/She
Where do you work?		work	works
Where do you go to school?		take	takes
How do you like your school?		study	studies
Where does Andrea work?	She works for Thomas Cook Travel. She's a guide. She takes people on tours. He goes to New York University. He loves it.	teach	teaches
What does she do?		do	does
Where does Jason go to school?		go	goes
How does he like it?		have	has

A Complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner.

1.	A:	What?
	B:	I'm a student. I study business.
	A:	And do you to school?
	B:	to Jefferson College
		do you like your classes?
	B:	I them a lot.
2.	A:	What Kanya do? dog a mercor dose priidi
	B:	She's a teacher. She mathematics at a school in Bangkok.
	A:	And what about Somsak? Where he work?
	B:	He for an electronics company.
	A:	does he do, exactly?

B: He's a salesman. He computer equipment.



B Pair work What do you know about these jobs? Complete the chart. Then write sentences describing each job, using he or she.

A doctor	A travel agent	A police officer
works in a hospital		countries in South America, I
nas an office	* round and which	
works long hours	•	Sob poy ob
cares for patients	9000-520	on the a student, and I have a p

A doctor works in a hospital. She has an office, too.

C Group work Ask your classmates questions about work and school.

- A: What do you do, Aki?
- B: I'm a student.
- C: Where do you go to school?
- B.

sale person (n)	[seil 'po:sn]	người bán hàng
chef (n)	[fef]	đầu bếp trưởng
nurse (n)	[no:s]	y tá
carpenter (n)	['ka:pintə]	thợ mộc
flight attendant (n)	[flait o'tendent]	tiếp viên hàng không

Việi

WRITING

A Write a description of what you do. Don't write your name on the paper.

I'm a student. I go to McGill University in Canada.
I'm a freshman. I study computer science. I work
part time at a radio station, too. I'm a disc jockey.
I play music. I love my job!

B Group work Pass your descriptions around the group. Can you guess who wrote each description?



CONVERSATION Daily schedules

A Listen and practice.

Daniel: How do you spend your day, Helen?

Helen: Well, on weekdays I get up around ten.
Then I read the paper for an hour and

have lunch at about noon.

Daniel: Really? What time do you go to work?

Helen: I start work at three.

Daniel: And when do you get home at night?

Helen: I get home pretty late, around midnight.

Daniel: So what do you do, exactly?

Helen: I'm a TV announcer. Don't you recognize

me? I do the weather report on KNTV!

Daniel: Gee, I'm sorry. I don't watch TV.

B Listen to Daniel describe how he spends his day.

1. What time does he get up? start work? study until?

2. What does he do?

MORAL SERVICE
Đàm thoại: Thời biểu hàng ngày

PRONUNCIATION Unstressed words

Phát âm: Các từ không có trong âm

A Listen and practice. The prepositions in these sentences (around, for, and at) are not stressed.

I get up around ten.

I read the paper for an hour.

I have lunch at about noon.

B *Pair work* Practice the conversation in Exercise 7 again. Be careful not to stress prepositions.

hospital (n)
patient (n)
doctor (n)
travel agent (n)
police officer (n)

[ˈhɔspitl] [ˈpei/nt] [ˈdɔktə] [ˈtrævlˈeidðənt] [peˈliːs ˈɔtīsə] bệnh viện bệnh nhân bác sĩ dại lý du lịch nhân viên công an

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp: Cách diễn đạt thời gian

seven o'clock

Time expressions 🗐

get up at 7:00 in the morning on weekdays. I go to bed around ten in the evening on weeknights. I leave work early in the afternoon on weekends I get home late at night on Fridays. I stay up until midnight on Saturdays. I wake up before/after noon on Sundays.

Ways to express clock time 7:00

seven
7:00 in the morning = 7:00 a.m.
7:00 in the evening = 7:00 p.m.

A Complete these sentences with time expressions.

1. I get up six the morning weekdays.
2. I go to bed midnight weeknights.
3. I start work 11:30 night.
4. I arrive at work Mondays,

7:00 A.M.

5. I have lunch three the afternoon weekdays.

6. I stay up weekends.

7. I have a little snack 9:00 the evening. 8. I sleep noon Sundays.

B Rewrite the sentences above so that they are true for you. Then compare with a partner.

C Pair work Take turns asking and answering these questions.

1. What days do you get up early? late?

- 2. What are two things you do before 8:00 in the morning?
- 3. What are three things you do on Saturday mornings?
- 4. How late do you stay up on Saturday nights?
- 5. What is something you do only on Sundays?

interchange 2

Common ground

Take a survey. Compare your schedule with your classmates' schedules. Turn to page IC-3.

10 LISTENING Nghe

A Listen to Rodney, Tina, and Ellen talk about their daily schedules. Complete the chart.

Tina		 Goes to bed at

B Class activity Who do you think has the best daily schedule? Why?

computer science (n) [kem'pju:te 'saiens] khoa học máy tính
announcer (n) [e'naunse] người giới thiệu chương trình
midnight (adj) ['midnait] nửa đêm
recognize (v) ['rekegnaiz] nhận ra

11 READING

The Daily Grind

Is it a good idea for a student to have a job? Why or why not?



Brandon Smith

I'm a junior in high school, and I have a part-time job in a restaurant. I bus dishes on Saturdays and Sundays from 8:00 until 4:00. I earn \$5.50 an hour. It isn't much money, but I save almost every penny! I want to go to a good university, and the cost goes up every year. Of course, I spend some money when I go out on Saturday nights.



Lauren Russell

I'm a senior in high school. I have a job as a cashier in a grocery store. The job pays well – about \$6.75 an hour. I work every weeknight after school from 4:00 until 8:00. I don't have time for homework, and my grades aren't very good this year. But I have to work, or I can't buy nice clothes and I can't go out on Saturday nights. Also, a car costs a lot of money.



Erica Davis

I'm a freshman in college. College is very expensive, so I work in a law office for three hours every weekday afternoon. I make photocopies, file papers, and sort mail for \$8.25 an hour. The job gives me good experience because I want to be a lawyer someday. But I don't want to work every semester. I need time to study.

A Read the article. Why do these students work? Check (✓) the correct boxes.

town the factor of	Brandon	Lauren	Erica
1. To earn money for college			
2. To buy nice clothes			
3. To go out on the weekend			
4. To pay for a car			
5. To get job experience			

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Look at the reasons why each student works. Who has good reasons to work? Who doesn't, in your opinion?
- 2. How many hours a week does each student work?
- 3. How much money does each student earn per week?
- 4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of part-time work for students?

How much is it?

Giá bao nhiệu ?

Thông tin nhanh

SNAPSHOT

Spending Habits of Adults and Teenagers in the United States Entertainment Room decor Clothing Housing Yearly expenses Health/ Yearly expenses personal care for Michael Perry. 31% for Rebecca Burns. 35. with a salary 16, with wages of \$31,105 a year. and an allowance 18% of \$2,620 a year. Clothing

Talk about these questions.

How does Michael Perry spend most of his money? How does Rebecca Burns spend most of her money?

How do their spending habits compare?

Transportation

How do you spend your money? Make two lists: things you have to buy and things you like to buy.

Taxes and savings

2 CONVERSATION Prices

A Listen and practice.

Steve: Oh, look at those earrings, Maria

They're perfect for you.

Maria: These red ones? I'm not sure.

Steve: No, the yellow ones.

Maria: Oh, these? Hmm. Yellow isn't

a good color for me.

Steve: Well, that necklace isn't bad.

Maria: Which one?

Steve: That blue one right there. How much is it?

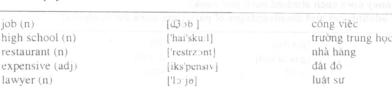
Maria: It's \$42! That's expensive! Steve: Hey, let me get it for you.

It's your birthday present.

B 🖭 Listen to the rest of the conversation

1. What else do they buy?

2. Who pays for it?





Entertainment

Portraits based on information from the Statistical

Abstract of the U.S. and the Rand Youth Poll

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Demonstratives; one, ones

How much is this necklace? this one?

How much are these earrings? these?

How much is that necklace? that one?

How much are those earrings? those?

Which one?

The blue one.

It's \$42

Which ones?

The yellow ones. They're \$18.

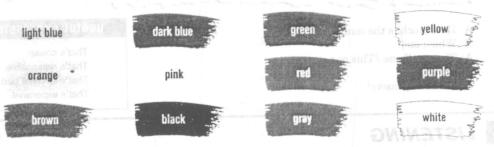


\$42

= forty-two dollars \$59.95 = fifty-nine ninety-five

or fifty-nine dollars and ninety-five cents

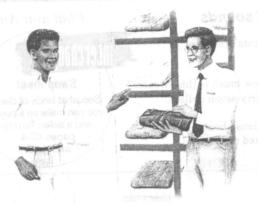
Colors of



Look at the pictures and complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner.

- 1. A: Excuse me. How much jeans?
 - B: Which? Do you mean?
 - A: No, the light blue

 - A: Almost sixty dollars! Are you kidding? ..
- 2. A: I like backpack over there. How much it?
 - B: Which? Each backpack has a different price.
 - A: red
 - B: It's \$98.50. But green
 - is only \$45.
 - A: OK. Let me look at it.





THAT'S EXPENSIVE!

Đặt quá

Pair work Ask and answer questions about these products. For help with numbers, see the appendix at the back of the book.



- A: How much is the computer?
- B: Which one?
- A: The small one./This one.
- B: It's \$5,456.
- A: That's expensive!

useful expressions

That's cheap. That's reasonable. That's OK/not bad. That's expensive.

5 LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to Tim and Sandra shopping, and complete the chart.

Item	Price	Do they	buy it?	Reason
 Rollerblades cap sunglasses 	A: I like		No	A: Exc\se me. How much jeans? Virteh

6 PRONUNCIATION Linked sounds

Phát âm: Am nói

A Listen and practice. Final consonants are often linked to the vowels that follow them.

A: How much are these pants?

A: And how much is this sweater?

B: They're forty-eight dollars. B: It's thirty-seven dollars.

B Pair work Ask and answer four questions about prices in this unit. Pay attention to the linked sounds.

Swap meet

See what kinds of deals you can make as a buyer and a seller. Turn to pages IC-4 and IC-5.

money (n) to be sure (adi) necklace (n)

['mAni] [tu bi: Juo] ['neklis]

tiên chắc chắn chuỗi hạt đeo cổ

WORD POWER Materials

Từ vưng: Vật liệu

A Pair work Identify these things. Use the words from the list. What other materials are these things sometimes made of? Make a list.

a gold ring polyester pants rubber boots

a cotton shirt leather gloves a plastic bracelet

a silk scarf silver earrings

















B Class activity Which of the materials can you find in your classroom?

"Juan has a leather bag."

8 CONVERSATION Shopping

Đàm thoại: Mua sắm

A Ex Listen and practice.

Anne: Look! These jackets are nice. Which one do you like better?

Sue: I like the wool one better.

Anne: Really? Why?

Sue: It looks warmer.

Anne: Well, I prefer the leather one.

It's more attractive than the wool one

Sue: Hmm. There's no price tag.

Anne: Excuse me. How much is this jacket?

Clerk: It's \$499. Would you like to try it on?

Anne: Oh, no. That's OK! But thank you anyway.

Clerk: You're welcome.



- 1. What does Anne buy?
- 2. What does Sue think of it?



colour (n)
blue (adj)
black (adj)
white (adj)
red (adj)

['kAla]	
[blu:]	
[blæk]	
[wait]	
[red]	

nau	
nàu	xanh
nàu	đen
nàu	trắng
nàu	đỏ

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Preferences; comparisons with adjectives

Which one do you prefer?

I prefer the leather one.

Which one do you like better/more?
I like the leather one better/more.

That one is **nicer than** the wool one.
This one is **cheaper than**
The leather jacket is **prettier than**

It looks bigger than It's more attractive than nice → nicer
cheap → cheaper
pretty → prettier

 $\begin{array}{ccc} \text{big} & \rightarrow & \text{bigger} \\ \text{good} & \rightarrow & \text{better} \end{array}$

For more information on comparatives, see the appendix at the back of the book.

A Complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner.









polyester tie

silk tie

medium shirt la

large shirt leather bo



leather boots rubber boots

B: Well, the blue one is silk. And silk is polyester: (nice)

2. A: Is this green shirt

that yellow one? (large)

B: The brown ones are leather. And leather is

rubber. (expensive)

B Pair work Compare the items above with a partner. Give your own opinions.

A: Which tie do you like better?

B: I like the orange one better. The design is nicer.

useful expressions

The color is prettier.
The design is nicer.
The style is more attractive.
The material is better.

10 WRITING

Viet

How much do these items cost in your country? Fill in the chart. Then compare the prices in your country with the prices in the U.S.

	Cost in my country	Cost in the U.S.
gasoline		\$ 1.10/gallon
a compact disc		\$ 12.99
a haircut		\$ 23.00
a pair of jeans	4	\$ 34.00

41.	Many things are more expensive in
	my country than in the United States.
50	For example, a liter of gas is
	about \$.66. In the U.S. it's cheaper.
	It's about \$1.10 per gallon

sunglasses (n) cap (n) cheap (adj) reasonable (adj) ['sAn'gla:siz]
[kæp]
[ti:p]
['ri:znobl]

kính rám mũ lưỡi chai rẻ hợp lý/vừa phải

Doc

Shop Till You Drop

Look at the pictures of different kinds of shopping in the United States. What kind of shopping can you do in your country?



Catalog Shopping

People in the United States often shop from catalogs. There are special catalogs for almost every need – including clothing, furniture, health and beauty products, and things for the kitchen. People also order about 40% of their music from music club catalogs. Customers say that music stores are too noisy.

earrings (n)



Television Shopping

Television shopping began in 1986.
About 5% to 8% of the American public now shops by television. Some popular shopping channels are the Home Shopping Network and QVC. Customers say that television shopping is easier than shopping in a store. How do they buy things? They make a phone call and charge the item to their credit card. And TV shopping channels are on late at night, so people can "go shopping" anytime.



Computer Shopping

Is computer shopping the way of the future? About 37% of American households now have personal computers. And shopping by computer (or "shopping on-line") is interesting to more people every day. Already, shoppers can use their computers to order many different products, such as computer products, flowers, food, T-shirts, and posters. And new on-line shopping services appear every day. Soon people may be able to shop for anything, anytime, anywhere in the world.

f A Read the article. Check (\checkmark) True or False. For the false statements, give the correct information.

te ono ['iəriŋ]

2. The Home	of music in the Unite Shopping Network is of American househ	the name of	a computer sho	pping service.		
B Pair work	Talk about these	questions.		westarus :		dod
	shopping? How of of shopping do yo				es.	
☐ television sl	discount stores nopping department	catalo	ing at small s g shopping ing at second ift stores	hand	computer sh shopping at	a mall
shirt (n) ring (n) gloves (n) pants (n)			((1)ols) o	áo sơ mi nhẫn gàng tay quần đùi	(n)	ne (n) polycyter leather tu

bông tai

4

Do you like jazz?

1 SNAPSHOT

Bạn có thích nhạc jazz không?

Thông tin nhanh

Music Sales in the United States



Talk about these questions.

Which of these kinds of music do people in your country listen to? What other kinds of music do people in your country like?

Listen and number the musical styles from 1 to 8 as you hear them.

opposition of	classical	monner	gospel	New Age	rap
	country	of waterns	jazz	рор	rock

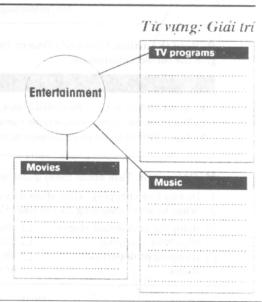
2 WORD POWER Entertainment

A Complete the chart with words from the list.

classical salsa
game shows science fiction
horror films soap operas
jazz talk shows
news thrillers
pop westerns

B Add three more words to each category. Then compare with a partner.

C Number the items in each list from 1 (you like it the most) to 7 (you like it the least).



tie (n)
polyester (n)
leather (n)
rubber (n)

[tai]
[,poli'esto(r)]
['leoo]
['rAbo]

vát vát da vát pôlyete da chất da, da thuộc do cao su

CONVERSATION Likes and dislikes

A Listen and practice.

Liz: Do you like jazz, Tom?

Tom: No, I don't like it very much. Do you?

Liz: Well, yes, I do. I'm a real fan of

Wynton Marsalis.

Tom: Oh, does he play the piano?

Liz: No, he doesn't! He plays the trumpet. So, what kind of music do you like?

Tom: I like rock a lot.

Liz: Who's your favorite group?

Tom: The Cranberries. I love their music. How about you? Do you like them?

Liz: No, I don't. I can't stand them!

B Est Listen to the rest of the conversation

1. Who is Liz's favorite singer?

2. Does Tom like that singer? Why or why not?

Đàm thoại: Thích và không thích



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Yes/No and Wh-questions with do

Do you like jazz?

Yes, I do. I like it a lot.

No, I don't like it very much.

Does he play the piano? Yes, he does.

No, he doesn't.

Do they like The Cranberries?

Yes, they do. They love them.

No, they don't like them very much.

What kind of music do you like?

What does he play?
He plays the trumpet.

Who do they like? They like R.E.M. Object pronouns
me
you (singular)
him
her
it

you (plural) them

Complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner.

- 1. A:you like horror films?
 - B: No, I......likevery much. I like comedies.
 - A: How about Lisa and Brian?....they like horror films?
 - B: Well, I think Brian............ Why don't you ask......?
- 2. A:you like the singer Bonnie Raitt?
 - B: Yes, I I really like a lot.
 - A: What of music she sing?
 - B: She's a rock singer.
 - A:she sing country music, too?

discount store (n)
department store (n)
secondhand store (n)
thrift store (n)

['diskaunt sto:]
[di'pa:tmont sto:]
['sekond'hænd sto:]
[Ørift sto:]

cửa hàng bán có chiết khẩu cửa hàng bách hoá tổng hợp cửa hàng bán đô cũ cửa hàng bán giá ré

5 PRONUNCIATION Question intonation

Phát âm: Ngữ điệu của câu hỏi

A Listen and practice. Yes/No questions usually have rising intonation Wh-questions usually have falling intonation.

Do you like movies?

What kind of movies do you like?

Do you like pop music?

What kind of music do you like?

B Practice these questions.

Do you like TV? Do you like music videos? What programs do you like? What videos do you like?

6 ENTERTAINMENT SURVEY

Thăm dò vê giải trí

A *Group work* Write five questions about entertainment and entertainers. Then ask and answer your questions in groups.

Do you like . . .?

(pop music, TV, movies, plays)
What kinds of . . . do you like?

(music, movies, TV programs)
What do you think of . . .?

(Star Trek, horror films, gospel music)

Gloria Estefan



B Group work Complete this information about your group.

ļ	Our Group Favorites			
	What's your favorite kind of?	Who's your favorite ?		
	music:			
	TV program:			

C Class activity Read your group's list to the class.
Then find out the class favorites.

useful expressions

Our favorite . . . is . . .

We all like

We don't agree on

We can't stand

7 LISTENING TV game show

Nghe: Chương trình chơi tren tivi

A Listen to four people playing Who's My Date? Three men want to invite Linda on a date. What kinds of things do they like? What kinds of things does Linda like?



	Music	Movies	TV programs
Bill	classical		
John		na science	olqued ee adl o. dalaas 33
Tony		a commun	
Linda			 N

B Class activity Who do you think is the best date for Linda?

8 CONVERSATION Invitations

Listen and practice.

Dave: I have tickets to The Phantom of the Opera

on Friday night. Would you like to go? Susan: Thanks. I'd love to. What time is the show?

Dave: It's at 8:00.

Susan: That sounds great. So, do you want to

have dinner at 6:00?

Dave: Uh, I'd like to, but I have to work late.

Susan: Oh, that's OK. Let's just meet at the theater

before the show, around 7:30

Dave: That sounds fine.

Đàm thoại: Lời mời



classical (adj) horror film (n) science fiction (n) news (n) ['klæsikøl] ['h∋rø film] ['saiøns'fik∫n] [nju:z] cổ điển phim kinh dị khoa học viễn tưởng tin tức

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Would; verb + to + verb	Ωį,	es tam ngu pi
Would you like to go out on Saturday night? Yes, I would Yes, I'd love to. Thanks. Yes, I'd really like to go.	Would you like to see a movie? I'd like to, but I have to work late I'd like to, but I need to save money. I'd like to, but I want to visit my parents.	Contraction would = rd
A Respond to these invitations. Then j I. A: I have tickets to the baseball gam B:		
2. A: Would you like to come over for di	Dnor tonick49	
o. A: Would you like to go to the gum w	ith me on Friday night?	
a great movie on TV tonia	ht Warld III	?
B Pair work Think of three different a partner to do them with you. Ask and when is it? What time does it start Where is it? What time should I/we	answer follow-up questions like these:	te

U LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to three people inviting friends to events and activities. Complete the chart. Do the friends accept the invitations?

	Event/Activity	Day	Time	Acce	pt?
Jake and Paula Lucy and Chris		······································		Yes	No 🗆
3. Rich and Ed	****				

WRITING

Viet

See Interchange 4 for the writing assignment.

What an invitation! What an excuse! Make up unusual invitations and funny excuses. Turn to

page IC-6.

country music (ii) singer (n) fan (n) group (n)	['&Antri ngu.zik] ['siqo] [fæn]	nhạc đồng quá ca sì co động viên
	(gru:p)	co đọng viên nhóm nhạc

READING

The Sound of Music

What are some traditional kinds of music in your country?

o you like popular music from Latin America, the United States, or Asia? Many musicians from around the world blend their country's music with popular sounds.

Cactano Veloso

After thirty years, Caetano Veloso is still one of Brazil's most important musicians. He mixes rock with the music of the Bahia region. Bahia is a state of Brazil that is strongly influenced by African culture. Caetano Veloso is an excellent songwriter and poet. He says of his music, "I make my records like a painter paints his canvas."



Bonnie Raitt is an American singer, songwriter, and guitarist. Her music blends rock with country and the blues. The blues is a kind of folk music that is often sad. It is usually about love and the problems of life. Bonnie Raitt's strong, rough voice is perfect for singing country and the blues.

Cui lian

Gui Jian [pronounced "tsay jyan"] is a very important musician in the growth of rock music in China.

Western styles, like jazz and rap, clearly influence his music. However, his music is very Chinese in its instruments and sounds.

Cui Jian says his music expresses the feelings of Chinese young people.



A Read about the three musicians. Complete the chart.

Marijes -	Nationality	Types of music he/she blends
 Caetano Veloso Bonnie Raitt Cui Jian 	ot	a Mack must a

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. What do these three musicians have in common?
- 2. How does Caetano Veloso make his records?
- 3. Why is Bonnie Raitt's voice good for country and blues music?
- 4. What does Cui Jian want his music to express?

movie (n)
program (n)
agree (v)
favourite (adj)

foot['mu:vi]

//['prougræm]

//[o'gri:]

['feivorit]

hozai phim pour chương trình poul đồng ý yêu thích

Review of Units 1-4

Ôn tập các bài 1-4

Tim hiểu ban

1 GETTING TO KNOW YOU

Pair work You are talking to someone at school. Have a conversation.

- A: Hi. How are you?
- B: . .
- A: By the way, my name is
- B: How do you pronounce your name again?
- A: ... Where are you from?
- B: ...
- A: Are you a student here?
- B: ... And how about you? What do you do?
- A: ..
- B: Oh, really? And where are you from?
- A: . .
- B: Well, nice talking to you. . . .



2 WHAT'S THE QUESTION?

Câu hói là gì?

Look at these answers. Write the questions. Then compare with a partner.

- No, Teresa and I aren't in the same class. She's in the morning class.
- 4. No, my teacher isn't American. She's Canadian.
- 2. My sister? She goes to the University of Toronto.

7. A video? Sure, I'd love to watch one with you.

6. I leave home at 6:30 in

the evening on weekdays.

3. I get up before 11:00 A.M.

on Sundays.

like jazz better.

5. Rock music is OK, but I

The red sweater is nicer than the purple one.

invite (v) ticket (n)

[in'vait]

mời

late (adj)

and [leit]

vé muón

3 ROLE PLAY In a department store

Pair work Put items "for sale" on your desk or a table - notebooks, watches, or bags. Use items of different colors.

Student A: You are a clerk. Answer the customer's questions.

Student B: You are a customer. Ask about the price of each item. Say if you want to buy it.

A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, I like that How much . . . ?

A: Which one(s)?

B: ...

Change roles and try the role play again.

Chơi phân vai: Trong cửa hàng bách hóa



4 LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to people asking questions at a party. Check () the best response.

- 1. I work in an office.
 - Yes, very early. Before 7:00 A.M.
- 2. Not very much.
 - Oh, I just stay in and work around the house.
- 3. Yes, I have a laptop.
 - ☐ A good laptop computer costs over \$2,000.
- 4. ☐ Yes, I'm from Italy.☐ Actually, I work here.
- Almost any kind except classical.
 - No, I don't play the piano.
- 6. Thanks, I'd love to. What time?
- ☐ It's on at the Varsity Theater.

TV AND RADIO

A Pair work Take turns asking and answering these questions.

TV

When do you usually watch TV?
What kinds of programs do you prefer?
What's your favorite channel?
What's your favorite program?
What time is it on?
Do you watch . . . (name of program)?

B Pair work Change partners. Take turns asking and answering these questions.

Radio

When do you listen to the radio? What kinds of programs do you listen to? Do you listen to programs in English?



What's your favorite radio station? Who are your favorite singers and groups? What's your favorite radio program?

gym (n) dinner (n) watch (v) [d3ım] ['dina]

[Wott]

phòng tập thể dục bữa tối xem

Tell me about your family.

Kể cho tôi nghe về gia đình của bạn

WORD POWER The family

Từ vưng: Gia dình

A Look at Sam's family tree. How are these people related to him? Add these words to the family tree.

cousin father grandmother niece sister-in-law uncle

wife



grandfather and

Gary

Diane

.... and aunt

and mother

Karen

James

Lisa

Tracev

Sam (husband) and his

brother and

Nicole James, Jr.

..... and nephew

B Pair work Draw your family tree. Then take turns talking about your families. Ask follow-up questions to get more information.

For a single person:

For a married person:

There are 6 in my family. I have 2 sisters and a brother. There are 4 in my family. We have a daughter and a son. Follow-up questions:

Where do/does your ... live? What do/does your . . . do?

popular (adj) culture (n) Western style (n) young people (n)

['popjulo] ['kAlt/o] ['weston stail] [jAn 'pi:pl]

thông thường/phổ biển văn hoá phong cách phương Tây người trẻ tuổi/thanh niên

LISTENING Hollywood families

Nghe: Các gia dình Hollywood

Listen to two conversations about famous people. How are the people related?



Shirley MacLaine

Annette Bening



Sheen

Estevez

Đàm thoại: Họi về

gia dình

3 CONVERSATION Asking about families



A Listen and practice.

Rita: Tell me about your brother and sister, Sue

Sue: Well, my sister is a lawyer.

Rita: Really? Does she live here in Seattle?

Sue: Yes, she does. But she's working in Washington, D.C., right now.

Her job is top secret.

Rita: Wow! And what does your brother do?

Sue: He's a painter. He's working in Argentina this month. He has an exhibition there.

Rita: What an interesting family!



- 1. Where do Rita's parents live?
- 2. What do they do?



Phát âm: Kết hợp với đoes PRONUNCIATION Blending with does

Listen and practice. Notice the blending of does with other words.

- 1. A: My brother is married.
 - (daziy) B: Does he have any children?
 - A: Yes, he does.
 - [wədəziy]
 - B: What does he do?
 - A: He's a painter.

- 2. A: My sister lives in Seattle.

 - B: **Does she** live with you?
 - A: No, she doesn't.
 - [wədə[iy]
 - B: What does she do?
 - A: She's a lawyer.

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Present continuous ...

Are you living at home now? is she still working in Seattle? Are they going to college this year?

Where are you working this month? What is she doing these days? Who are they visiting this week?

Yes, I am./No. I'm not. Yes, she is./No, she isn't. Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

I'm working in Japan. She's teaching at a university. They're visiting their parents.

Some verbs generally not used in the present continuous

have know like love want

A Complete these conversations using the present tense or the present continuous. Then practice with a partner.

- 1. A: Is anyone in your family looking for a job? B: Yes, my sister is. She (work) part time in a restaurant now, but she (look) for a job in a theater company. She(love) acting.
- 2. A: What is your brother doing these days? B: He(go) to college this semester. He(like) it a lot. He (study) mathematics.
- 3. A: Where do your parents live?
 - B: They..... (live) in Chicago most of the time, but they(stay) in Florida this winter. They (have) a house there.
- B Pair work Take turns asking the questions in part A or similar questions of your own. Give your own information when answering.

C Group work Take turns. Ask each student about his or her family. Then ask follow-up questions to get more information.



Topics to ask about

traveling living abroad taking a class moving to a new home going to college or high school studying a foreign language looking for a job

- A: Is anyone in your family traveling right now?
- B: Yes, my father is.
- C: Where is he?
- B: He's in Bangkok.
- D: What's he doing there?
- B: ...



Family facts

Find out some interesting facts about your classmates' families. Tum to page IC-7.

again (adv) really (adv) before (adv)

[o'gen] ['rioli]

[bi'fo:]

lai, nữa thực sự trước, đẳng trước

Facts About Families in the United States

Children

57% of children under six have two parents who work or a single parent who works.



63% of women with children work.



50% of working women return to work within a year of having a baby.



Marriage

50% of marriages end in divorce.



80% of divorced people remarry; more than 50% divorce again.

Elderly

20% to 30% of the population now cares for an elderly relative, or will within five years.



Source: The Family and Medical Leave Act

Talk about these questions.

Which of these facts surprises you?

Do women with children usually work in your country?

Do people often get divorced?

Do elderly people generally live with relatives?

CONVERSATION Describing family life

Đàm thoại: Miêu tá cuộc sống gia dình

A Listen and practice.

Ryan: Look at this headline, Soo Mi. Soo Mi: Wow! So many people in the United States get divorced!

Ryan: Is it the same in Korea?

Soo Mi: I don't think so. In Korea, some marriage: break up, but most couples stay together.

Ryan: Do people get married young?

Soo Mi: Not really. Very few people get married

before the age of 20.

Ryan: Hmm. Do women usually work after

they get married?

Soo Mi: No, a lot of women stay home and take care of their families. But some work.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

What does Ryan say about families in the United States? Write down two things.



channel (n) listen to (v) laptop (n) [ˈtʃænl] [ˈlɪsn tu] [læp təp]

kênh nghe máy tính xách tay

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Determiners (1)

Nearly all women with children work Most

Many

A lot of Some

women stay home after they get married

Not many

A few Few

couples stay together

No one

gets married before the age of 20

A Rewrite these sentences using determiners. Then compare with a partner

- 1. In Australia, 87% of married couples have children.
- 2. Six percent of 20- to 24-year-olds in the United States are divorced.
- 3. Thirty-five percent of the people in Germany live alone.
- 4. In China, 50% of women get married by the age of 22.

B Pair work Rewrite the sentences in part A so that they are about your country. Then discuss your information with a partner when a paidings of

In my country, only some married couples have children.

useful expressions

Is that right?

Do you think so? I think

I don't agree.

I don't think so.

It's different in my country.

WRITING

Viet

A Write about families in your country. Use some of your ideas from Exercise 8.

In my country, most people get married by the age of 30. Not many women work after they get married. Grandparents, parents, and children often live in the same house.

B Group work Take turns reading your compositions. Then answer any questions from the group.



grandfather (n) aunt (n) husband (n)	['grændfa:ðø] [a:nt] ['hAzbønd]	f (gnó les in the nô/changs.
wife (n) nephew (n)	(mzoond) (maif]	chống Image vợ cháu tr

10 READING

The Changing Family

What kinds of problems do parents have in your country?



Now that Judy is working, Steve has to help her more with the housework. He doesn't enjoy it, however



American families are changing. One important change is that most married women now work outside the home. What happens when both parents work?

Read about the Morales family.

Judy and Steve Morales have three children: Josh, 12; Ben, 9; and Emily, 6. Steve is a computer programmer. This year, Judy is working again as a hospital administrator. The family needs the money, and Judy likes her job. Everything is going well, but there are also some problems.



Judy loves her work, but she feels tired and too busy. She also worries about the children. Judy has to work on Saturdays, so Steve and Judy don't have a lot of free time together.

Emily is having a great time in her afterschool program. When Judy comes to pick her up, she doesn't want to leave.





Unfortunately, Ben's school doesn't have an after-school program. Right now, he's spending most afternoons by himself in front of the TV.

Josh is enjoying his new freedom after school. He's playing his music louder and spending more time on the phone. He's also doing a few household chores.

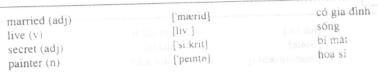


A Read the article. What are Steve's and Judy's problems? Complete the chart.

1. Steve 2. Judy 3. Steve and Judy

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Which of the problems above do you think is the most serious? Offer some solutions for that problem.
- 2. Which of the children are benefiting from Judy's working? Which one is not?





How often do you exercise?

Bạn có luyện tập thường xuyên không?

Thông tin nhanh

SNAPSHOT

Top six sports

and fitness activities

for teenagers in the United States

Males

- 1. Football
- 2. Basketball
- 3. Weight training
- 4. Jogging
- 5. Bicycling
- 6. Swimming

FEMALES

- 1. Swimming
- 2. Basketball
- 3. Bicycling
- 4. Aerobics
- 5. Jogging
- 6. Regular fitness program

Talk about these questions.

Source: America's Youth in the 1990s; George H. Gallup International Institute

Do males and females in your country enjoy any of these sports or activities? Do you enjoy any of these or other sports or activities? Which ones?

WORD POWER Sports and exercise

Từ vưng: Thế dục thể thao



A Pair work Which of these activities are popular with the following age groups? Check (✓) the activities. Then compare with a partner.

	Children	Teens	Young adults	Middle-aged people	Older
aerobics	school. He's		(IIIIIIIIII) (m	ton admiras ador	0/2011
baseball					71 800
bicycling					
Rollerblading					
soccer					
swimming					
tennis				H	
weight training					
yoga				n 19781	୍ ମ
				VO	

- A: I think aerobics are popular with teens.
- B: And with young adults.

B Pair work Which of the activities above are used with do, go, or play?

do aerobics	go bicyclina	play baseball

look for (v) theater (n) mathematics (n) [luk fo:] ['θioto] [,mæθo'mætiks] tìm kiêm nhà hát môn toán

3 CONVERSATION Describing routines Dam tiroqi: Mieu ta những

A Listen and practice.

việc làm thường xuyên

Marie: You're really fit, Paul. Do you exercise very much?

Paul: Well, I almost always get up very early, and

I lift weights for an hour.

Marie: You're kidding!

Paul: No. And then I often go Rollerblading.

Marie: Wow! How often do you exercise like that? Paul: About five times a week. What about you?

Marie: Oh, I hardly ever exercise. I usually just

watch TV in my free time. I guess I'm a

real couch potato!

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

What else does Paul do in his free time?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Adverbs of frequency

How often do you usually exercise? I lift weights every day. I go jogging about once a week. I play basketball twice a month. I exercise about three times a year. I don't exercise very often/very much. Do you ever wotch television in the evening? Yes, I almost always watch TV after dinner. sometimes wotch TV before bed. Sometimes I wotch TV before bed.* I seldom watch TV in the evening. No. I never watch TV.

*Sometimes can begin a sentence.

always almost always usually often sometimes seldom hardly ever almost never

A Put the adverbs in the correct place. Then practice with a partner.

1. A: What do you do on Saturday mornings? (usually) B: Nothing much. I sleep until noon. (almost always)

2. A: Do you go bicycling? (ever)

B: Yeah, I go bicycling on Saturdays. (often)

3. A: How often do you play sports? (usually) a make box

B: Well, I play tennis. (twice a week)

4. A: What do you do after class? (usually)

B: I go out with my classmates. (about three times a week)

5. A: How often do you exercise? (usually)

B: I exercise. (seldom)

B Pair work Take turns asking the questions in part A. Give your own information when answering.



fact (n) surprise (v) divorced (adj) relative (n)

[fækt] [so'praiz] [di'və:st]

['relativ]

thực tế ngạc nhiên đã ly di ho hàng/bà con

5 PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress

Phát âm: Trọng âm câu

A E Listen to the syllables stressed in each sentence. Notice that the adverbs of frequency are stressed. Then practice the sentences.

I hardly ever do yoga in the morning.

I often go Rollerblading on Saturdays.

I almost always play tennis on weekends.

B Pair work Write four sentences about yourself using adverbs of frequency. Then take turns saying the sentences using the correct stress.

6 FITNESS POLL

Tham dò ý kiến về rèn luyên sức khỏe

A Group work Take a poll in your group. One person takes notes. Take turns asking each person these questions.



Do you have
 a regular fitness
 program?
 How often do
 you exercise?



2. Do you ever go to a gym? How often do you go? What do you do there?



3. Do you play any sports? How often do you play?



4. How often do you take long walks? Where do you go?



5. What else do you do to keep fit?

B Group work Study the results of the poll. Who in your group has a good fitness program?

7 LISTENING

Ngh

Listen to what Ted, Wanda, and Kim like to do in the evening. Complete the chart.

	Favorite activity	How aften?
Ted	***************************************	
Wanda	***************************************	
Kim		

couple (n)	[ˈkʌpl]	c ặ p/đối
children (n)	[tfilm]	trẻ con
parents (n)	['peerent]	bố mẹ

8 WRITING Favorite activities

Viết: các hoạt đông ưa thích

A Write about your favorite activities.







I love to exercise. I usually work out every day. I get up early in the morning and go running for about an hour Then I often go to the gym and do aerobics. Sometimes I go for a walk in the afternoon.

About once a week, I play basketball

B Group work Take turns reading your compositions. Then answer any questions from the group.

9 CONVERSATION Describing exercise

Đàm thoại: mieu tá sự tạp luyen

Listen and practice.

Rod: You're in great shape, Keith. Do you work out at a gym?

Keith: Yeah, I do. I guess I'm a real fitness freak.

Rod: So, how often do you work out?

Keith: Well, I do aerobics every day after work.

And then I play racquetball.

Rod: Say, I like racquetball, too.

Keith: Oh, do you want to play sometime? Rod: Uh, . . . how well do you play?

Keith: Pretty well, I guess.

Rod: Well, all right. But I'm not very good.

Keith: No problem, Rod. I won't play too hard.



help (v) housework (n) important (atlj) pick up (v) (help)
['hauswo:k}
[im'po:tent]
[pik Ap]

giúp đỡ r việc nhà quan trọng đón ai/nhật lên Listen to John, Anne, and Phil discuss sports and exercise moved more goods surely as Which one is a couch potato? a fitness freak? a sports fanatic?



a couch potato



a fitness freak



a sports fanatic

GRAMMAR FOCUS Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Fitness quiz

Find out how fit you are. Turn to page IC-8.

Questions with how; short answers

How often do you work out?

Twice a week. Not very often

How much time do you spend at the gym? How long do you spend working out?

Around two hours a day. I don't work out.

How well do you play racquetball?

Pretty well.

About average, I guess.

Not very well.

How good are you at sports?

I'm pretty good at sports. I guess I'm OK. Not too good.



- 1. A: at volleyball?
 - B: I guess I'm pretty good.
- - B: Not very well, but I'd like to learn to swim better.
- - B: Pretty often. About three or four times a week.
- 4. A: spend exercising?

B: I spend about an hour every day.

B Group work Take turns asking the questions in part A and your own questions. Give your own information when answering.

Who in your group is a couch potato? a fitness freak? a sports fanatic?

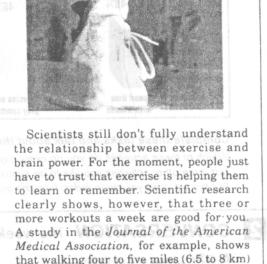


Smart Moves

Look at the statements in part A below. Which do you think are true?

t won't surprise fitness freaks to learn that aerobic exercise does more than raise the heart rate: It lifts the spirit and builds confidence. But many brain researchers believe that something else happens, too. Just as exercise makes the bones, muscles, heart, and lungs stronger, researchers think that it also strengthens important parts of the brain.

Research suggests that aerobic exercise helps you learn new things and remember old information better. Aerobic exercise sends more blood to the brain and it also feeds the brain with substances that develop new nerve connections. If the exercise has complicated movements like dance steps or basketball moves, the brain produces even more nerve connections—the more connections, the better the brain can process all kinds of information.



an hour for 45 minutes five times a week

helps you live longer. So don't be a couch

potato. Get out there and do something!

A Pair work According to the article, which of these statements are probably true? Check (✓) the statements. What information helped you determine this? ■ 8 BB W Underline the information in the article.

*					
E	rp	re	21	D	

- 1. makes you feel happier.
- 2. makes you feel more self-confident.
- 3. strengthens the body.
- 4. can increase your height.

- 5. can help you learn things better.
- 6. helps you remember things better.
- 7. gives you better eyesight.
- 8. helps you live longer.

B Pair work Talk about these questions. Explain your answers.

- 1. Do you think that exercise helps people to learn and remember better?
- 2. Can you think of other benefits from exercise?
- 3. What benefits are most important to you?

baseball (n) derobics (n) bicycling (n) tennis (n) ['beisbɔ:l]
[eo'roubiks]
['baisikliŋ]
['tenis]

bóng chày/chuyển thể dục nhịp điệu đua xe đạp ten nít

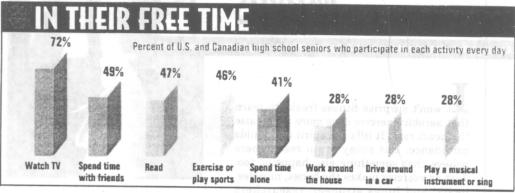


We had a great time!

Chúng ta đã có một thời gian tuyệt vời

Thông tin nhanh

SNAPSHOT



Complete these tasks and talk about them.

Which of these activities do you do every day?

List three other activities you like to do almost every day.

Put the activities you do in order: from the most interesting to the least interesting.

Source: University of Michigan, Institute for Social Research

CONVERSATION The weekend

A Listen and practice.

Chris: So, what did you do this weekend, Kate?

Kate: Oh, Diane and I went for a drive in the

country on Saturday.

Chris: That sounds nice. Where did you go?

Kate: We drove to the lake and had a picnic. We had a great time! How about you?

Did you do anything special?

Chris: Not really. I just worked on my car

all day.

Kate: That old thing! Why don't you just

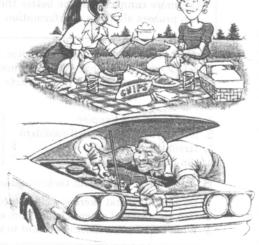
buy a new one?

Chris: But then what would I do every weekend?

B Listen to Kate talk about her activities on Sunday.

- 1. What did she do?
- 2. Where did she go?

Đàm thoại: ngày nghỉ cuối tuần



170	
until (pre)	obyudolyškio goodon'til]
free time (n)	and questions and [fri: taim]
once (adv)	[w\lambda ns]
twice (adv)	[twais]

đến khi khi khởi gian rảnh rỗi một lần hai lần

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Did you stay home on Sunday?	Yes, I did. I watched a football game on TV. No, I didn't. I invited friends out to dinner.	Regular verbs invite → invited work → worked
What did you do on Saturday?	I worked on my car. I stayed home and studied.	stay → stayed study → studied
Did you do anything special?	Yes, I did. I drove to the lake. No, I didn't. I had to baby-sit.	drive \rightarrow drove go \rightarrow went have \rightarrow had
Where did you go on Sunday?	I saw a good movie. I went to a concert.	see → saw spend → spent

For a list of irregular past forms and pronunciation rules for regular past forms, see the appendix at the back of the book.

A Complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner.

- A:you(go) out on Friday night?
 B: No, I I(invite) friends over, and I(cook) dinner for them.
- 2. A: How.......you......(spend) your last birthday?

 B: I......(have) a party. Everyone......(enjoy) it,
 but the neighbors......(complain) about the noise.
- A: Whatyou(do) last night?
 B: I(go) to the new Tom Cruise film.
 I(love) it!

B Pair work Take turns asking the questions in part A. Give your own information when answering.



4 PRONUNCIATION Reduced forms of did you

Phát âm: Các dạng rút gọn của did you

A Listen and practice. Notice how did you is reduced in the following questions.

[did30]

Did you have a good time?

[wodid30] What did you do last night?

B Pair work Practice the questions in the grammar box in Exercise 3. Pay attention to the pronunciation of did you.

walk (v) fitness program (n) $[w_{2};k]$

['fitnis 'prougræm]

đị bô

chương trình rèn luyện sức khoẻ

5 WORD POWER Collocation

Từ vựng: Sự kết hợp từ

f A Find two other words or phrases from the list that are usually paired with each verb. an art exhibition a vacation and a party and a trip shopping a lot of fun and a play the laundry did housework swimming went had a good time a movie saw a day off took B Write five sentences using words from the list. I saw a movie last weekend. 6 ANY QUESTIONS? Có câu hỏi nào không? Group work Take turns. One student makes a statement about the weekend. Other students ask questions. Each student answers at least four questions. A: I went dancing on Saturday night. B: Where did you go? A: To the Rock-it Club. C: Who did you go with?

7 LISTENING

A: . . .

A: I went with my brother.
D: What time did you go?
A: We went at around 10:00
E: How did you like it?

Nghe

A Listen to John and Laura describe what they did last night. Check () the correct information about each person.

B Listen to the conversation again. What did each person do? Take notes.

Then take turns telling their stories to a partner.

step	IJ POLE
	. Dogb
39V8	I you h

run (v)	[r\lambdan]	chay
	lafa gnoud [plei]	chơi
racquet ball (n)	[ˈrækit bɔːl]	quả bóng quần vợ

Đàm thoại: Đi nghi

8 CONVERSATION On vacation

Listen and practice.

Mike: Hi, Celia! How was your trip to the United States?

Celia: It was terrific. I really enjoyed it.
Mike: Great. How long were you away?
Celia: I was there for about three weeks.

Mike: That's a long time! Was the weather OK?

weather UK?

Celia: Yes, most of the time. But it snowed a lot in Chicago.

Mike: So, what was the best thing about

your trip? Celia: Oh, that's difficult to say. But I guess

I liked Nashville the best.





9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Past tense of be

Were you and your sister away...?

Were you and your sister away?
Were your parents away?

How long were you away? How was your vacation? Yes, I was.
No, he wasn't.
Yes, we were.
No, they weren't

I was away for three weeks

Contractions

was not = wasn't were not = weren't

istanbui

Complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner.

- 1. A: How long your parents in Europe?
 - B: They there for a month.
 - A: they in London the whole time?
 - B: No, they They also went to Paris and Madrid.
- 2. A: you away last weekend?
 - B: Yes, I...... in San Francisco.
 - A: How it?
 - B: It great!
 - A: How the weather?
 - B: Oh, it foggy and cool as usual.
- 3. A: I..... in Istanbul last summer.
 - B: Really? How long you there?
 - A: For six weeks.
 - B: you there on business or on vacation?
 - A: I there on business.



couch potato (n) sport (n)

pretty (adj)

[kaut/ po'teitou]

[spo:t]

người nghiễn xem TV thể thao xinh đẹp/xinh xăn

10 VACATIONS

nousees no MOMAZGEM Kỳ nghi

A Group work Take turns talking about vacations. Ask these questions and others of your own.

Where did you spend your last vacation? How long were you away? Were you with your family? What did you do there? How was the weather? the food?
Did you buy anything?
Do you want to go there again?

B Class activity Who in your group had the most interesting vacation? Tell the class who and why.

interchange 7

Vacation photos

Use the vacation photos to tell a story. Student A turns to page IC-9.
Student B turns to page IC-10.

11 LISTENING

Listen to Jason and Barbara talk about their vacations. Complete the chart.

1000	Vacation place	Enjoy	ed it?	Reason(s)
		Yes	No	Rysi terse of per let
Jason				
Barbara				281 ABSW 101 YOM DOY STOW

12 WRITING

Viet

A Read this postcard.

Dear Richard,
Greetings from Acapulco! I'm having a
great time! Yesterday I went on a tour
of the city, and today I went shopping.
I bought some beautiful jewelry. Oh,
and last night, I heard some Mariachi
singers on the street. They were terrific.
That's all for now.

Love, Kathy



B *Pair work* Write a postcard to a partner about your last vacation or an interesting place you visited recently. Then exchange postcards.

learn (v)	[lo:n]	học	
bone (n)	[boun]	xương	
muscle (n)	['m\sl]	cơ bắp	
blood (n)	[bl\d]	máu	
brain (n)	[brein]	não	

READING Vacation postcards

Đoc bưu thiếp về kỳ nghi

Look at the pictures. What do you think each person did on his or her vacation

Paula,

I can't believe my trip is over. I arrived in Egypt just two weeks ago! I was with a group from the university. We went to the desert to dig in some old ruins. I didn't find anything, but I learned a lot. I'm tired, but I loved every minute of my trip.

Take care, Margaret

HI, Luis!

My Hawaiian vacation just ended, and I am very relaxed! I spent my whole vacation at a spa in Koloa, Kauai Every day for a week I exercised, did yoga, meditated, and ate vegetarian food I also went swimming and the lang snorkeling. I feel fantastic! Love. Sue

Dear Michael, Alaska is terrific! I was just on a trip in the Arctic National Wildlife Refuge. There were six people on the trip. We hiked for ten days. Then we took rafts to the Arctic Ocean. I saw a lot of wildlife. Now I'm going to Anchorage. See you in 3 weeks!

Kevin



A	Read the	postcards.	Then	check	(1)	the	statements	that are t	rue.

- ☐ 1. Margaret had a very relaxing vacation.
- 2. Margaret enjoyed her vacation.
 - 3. Sue was in Hawaii for two weeks.
- 4. Sue got a lot of exercise.
- 5. Kevin spent his vacation alone.
- 6. Kevin's vacation is over.

B Group work Talk about these questions. Explain your answers

- 1. Which person learned a lot on vacation?
- 2. Who had a vacation that was full of adventure?
- 3. Who had a very relaxing vacation?
- 4. Which vacation sounds the most interesting to you?

How do you like the neighborhood?

Bạn có thích khu láng giềng này không?

WORD POWER Places

A Match the words and the definitions. Then practice asking the questions with a partner.

What's a . . . ?

- 1. barber shop
- 2. laundromat
- 3. library
- 4. stationery store
- 5. travel agency
- 6. grocery store
- 7. theater

It's a place where you

- a. wash and dry clothes.
- b. buy food.
- c. buy cards and paper.
- d. get a haircut.
- e. see a movie or play.
- f. make reservations for a trip.
- g. borrow books.

B Pair work Write definitions for these places.

bank bookstore dance club

coffee shop

drugstore gas station gym hotel

post office restaurant

It's a place where you keep your money. (bank)

C Group work Read your definitions in groups. Can others guess what each place is?



Từ vưng: Nơi chốn

2 CONVERSATION The neighborhood Dam thoai: Khu láng giếng



Listen and practice.

Jack: Excuse me. I'm your new neighbor, Jack. I just moved in.

Woman: Oh. Yes?

Jack: I'm looking for a grocery store. Are there any around here?

Woman: Yes, there are some on Pine Street.

Jack: OK And is there a laundromat near here?

Woman: Well, I think there's one across from the shopping center.

Jack: Thank you.

Woman: By the way, there's a barber shop in the

shopping center, too.

Jack: A barber shop?

weekend (n) picnic (n) special (adj)

['wi:kend] ['piknik] ['spes]]

cuối tuần cuộc píc-níc đặc biệt

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

There is, there are; one, any, some 🗔

is there a laundromat near here?

Yes, there is. There's one across from the shopping center. No, there isn't, but there's one next to the library.

Are there any grocery stores around here?

Yes, there are. There are some on Pine Street.

No, there aren't, but there are some on Third Avenue.

Prepositions

on
next to
across from/opposite
in front of
in back of/behind
near/close to
between
on the corner of

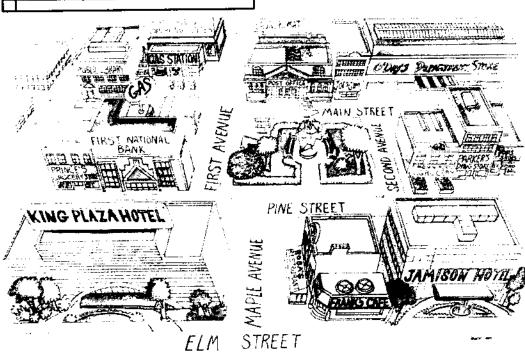
A Write questions about these places in the neighborhood map below.

a bank gas stations a department store grocery stores

a gym hotels a laundromat a pay phone a post office restaurants

Is there a pay phone around here?

Are there any restaurants on Maple Avenue?



B Pair work Ask and answer the questions you wrote in part A.

A: Is there a pay phone around here?

B: Yes, there is. There's one across from the post office.

complain (v) noise (adj) to be broke {kom'plein] [n∋iz] {tu bi: brouk] phàn năn ôn áo hết nhấn tiến/nhấn túi

PRONUNCIATION Reduced forms of there is/there are

Phát âm: Các dạng rút gọn của there is / there are

Listen and practice. Notice how there is and there are are reduced in conversation.

There's a gym across from the shopping center.

There's a bookstore near the laundromat.

There are some restaurants on Elm Street.

There are some grocery stores across from the post office.

IN YOUR NEIGHBORHOOD

Trong khu láng giếng của ban

Group work Take turns asking and answering questions about places like these in your neighborhood.

a bookstore a gym

dance clubs drugstores

a coffee shop movie theaters

a music store a pay phone

stationery stores a travel agency

A: Is there a good bookstore in your neighborhood?

A: And are there any drugstores?

B: ...

useful expressions

Sorry, I don't know. I'm not sure, but I think Of course. There's one

6 LISTENING

Nghe

Some hotel guests are asking about places to visit in the neighborhood. Complete the chart.



Place	Location	Intere	sting?
Hard Rock Cafe Science Museum Aquarium	ELM STREET sk and answer the questions you wate in part A phone around herr." bare's one across from the post ofnic.	A	No

trip (n)

play (n)

[trip]

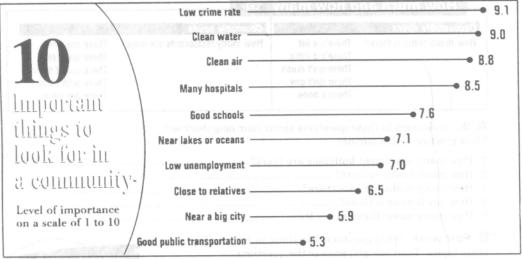
[plei] art exhibition (n) [a:t,eksi'bifn] cuộc hành trình

vở kich

bland ed e triển lãm nghệ thuật

7 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Complete these tasks and talk about them.

Source: Money Magazine

What is important to you in a community? Rank the features above from the most important (1) to the least important (10).

List three other things you think are important in a community.

8 CONVERSATION Describing neighborhoods

Đàm thoại: Miêu tá các khu láng giếng

A Listen and practice.

Dan: Where do you live, Kim?

Kim: I live in an apartment downtown.

Dan: Oh, that's convenient, but . . . how

much crime is there?

Kim: Not much. But there is a *lot* of traffic.

I can't stand the noise sometimes!

Where do you live?

Dan: I have a house in the suburbs.

Kim: Oh, I bet it's really quiet.

But is there much to do there?

Dan: No, not much. In fact, nothing ever really happens. That's the trouble.

Kim: Hey. Let's trade places one weekend!

Dan: OK. Great idea!

B E Listen to the rest of the conversation

What do Dan and Kim say about restaurants in their neighborhoods?



enjoy (v) terrific (adj) weather (n) difficult (adj) [in'd35i] [to'rifik]

/ada nac['weðo]

thích thú/được hưởng rất lớn/cực kỳ thời tiết khó khăn

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tam ngữ pháp

How much and how many ...

Uncountable nouns How much crime is there?

There's a lot.
There's a little.
There isn't much.
There isn't any.
There's none.

Countable nouns

How many restaurants are there?

Việt

There are a lot.
There are a few.
There aren't many.
There aren't any.
There are none.

A Write answers to these questions about your neighborhood. Then practice with a partner.

- How many apartment buildings are there?....
- 2. How much traffic is there?
- 3. How many bookstores are there?
- 4. How much noise is there?....
- 5. How many movie theaters are there?

B Pair work Write questions like those in part A about these topics. Then ask and answer the questions.

crime parks pollution restaurants schools stores

interchange 8

Neighborhood survey

Compare two neighborhoods in your city. Turn to

10 WRITING

A Group work Talk about where you live.

Discuss these questions in groups.

Do you live in a house or an apartment? Where is it?

How many rooms are there?

How much noise is there?

Are there any good restaurants nearby?

How many clubs/theaters/gyms are there in your neighborhood?

Is there any public transportation near your home?

How do you like it there?

B Write a paragraph about where you live. Use the information you discussed in part A.



I live in a big apartment building in the city. There are two bedrooms,

a living room, a dining room, and a kitchen. There's a lot of noise in

my neighborhood because there's a dance club across from my building.

food (n) tell (v) story (n) beautiful (adj) [fu:d] [tel] ['stɔ:ri]

['bju:tiful]

thức ăn/thực phẩm kể/nói

câu chuyện

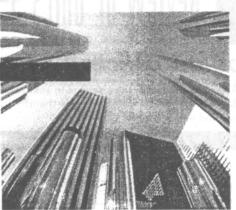
City Scenes

What are cities like in your country?

In many countries around the world, more and more people live in cities. Cities share many characteristics, but are also different from country to country.

Mexico Mexico's cities are modern but have traditional Indian and Spanish influences. The most important buildings are around a central square, which also serves as a place to meet with friends. There are outdoor marketplaces, where people can find almost anything they need. On Sundays, parks are a popular place for family outings. Many people move to Mexico City from rural areas. It has a lot of excitement, but also lots of traffic and air pollution.

Japan Japan's cities also have a mix of traditional and modern characteristics. There are tall office and apartment buildings as well as traditional wooden houses. Many people prefer to live near the center of cities, but because houses there are expensive, they often commute from suburbs. Traffic, pollution, and crowds are problems.



However, there is little crime, and even very crowded cities have many parks and gardens.

Australia Although 80% of Australians live near cities, the cities are not as large as those in some other countries. Most people live in houses in suburbs – not in apartments. The suburbs usually have their own churches, schools, and shopping centers. They also have recreational facilities. In large cities, like Sydney, the suburbs are often far from the center of town. Because many people commute to work, traffic is slow and there are many traffic jams.

A Read the article and complete the chart. Write one positive feature and one negative feature of cities in the countries described.

	Positive	Negative
1. Mexico		
2. Japan		
3. Australia		Set 19912 to State 17 both
		Colleged Laboratory Comment Endows

B Pair work Find five characteristics of the cities above that are also true of cities in your country.

arrive (v)
university (n)
minute (n)
wildlife (n)
be full of

[øˈraiv] [,juːniˈvʊːsəti] [ˈminit] [ˈwaildlaif] [biː ful ɔv] đến/tới nơi trường đại học phút động vật hoang dã đẩy

Review of Units 5-8

DO YOU DANÇE?

Ôn tập các bài 5-8

Ban có khiều vũ khong?

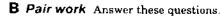
A Class activity Does anyone in your class do these things? How often and how well do they do them? Go around the class and find one person for each activity.

	Name	How often?	How well?
dance		,.,,.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
piay basketbali			
do karate			•••••
play computer games			
swim			
play the piano			

- A: Do you dance?
- B: Yes, I do.
- A: How often do you go dancing?
- B: Every weekend.
- A: And how well do you dance?
- B: Actually, not very well. But I enjoy it!
- **B** Group work Tell your group what you found out.

2 LISTENING

A in A thief robbed a house on Saturday. Detective Dobbs is questioning Frankie. The pictures show what Frankie did on Saturday. Listen to their conversation. Are Frankie's answers true (T) or false (F)?



- 1. What did Frankie do after he cleaned the house?
- 2. Where did he go? What did he do? When did he come home?









3:00 P.M.





5:00 P.M.









6:00 P.M.

TF

8:00 P.M.

T F

10:30 P.M. T F

neibourhood (n) laundromat (n) library (n) haircut (n) borrow (v)

['neibahud] [To:ndramæt] [laibrori] ['henkAt] [borou]

khu láng giếng hiệu giặt tư động thư viên sư cắt tóc mươn

3 WHAT CAN YOU REMEMBER?

Ban nhớ được những gì?

A Pair work Talk about what you did yesterday. Take turns asking these questions. Give as much information as possible.

What time did you get up yesterday?

What did you wear?

Were you late for class?

Did you meet anyone interesting?

How many phone calls did you make?

Did you drive or take the bus anywhere?

Did you buy anything?

How much money did you spend yesterday?

Did you watch TV? What programs did you watch?

Did you do any exercise?

Were you in bed before midnight?

What time did you go to sleep?

B Group work Close your books. Take turns. How many questions can you ask?



4 ROLE PLAY What's it like?

Student A: Imagine you are a visitor in your city.
You want to find out more about it.
Ask the questions in the box.

Student B: You are a resident of your city.

A visitor wants to find out more about it.

Answer the visitor's questions.

Change roles and try the role play again.

Chơi phân vai: Tình trạng ra sao?

Questions to ask

What's it like to live here?

How much unemployment is there?

How much crime is there?

How many good schools are there?

Is traffic a problem?

What's public transportation like?

Are there many places to shop? Where?

5 WHAT'S GOING ON?

Chuyên gì vây?

A Listen to the sounds of four people doing different things. What do you think each person is doing?

	What's going on?
1.	brase brasersom s bisd tran nworo gilor
2.	

B Pair work Compare your answers with a partner.

A: In number 1, someone is shaving.

B: I don't think so. I think someone is

bank (n)	[bæŋk]	ngân hàng
hotel (n)	(lat'uod) của hàng sách	khách sạn
post office (n)	adual usud [poust 'afis]	bưu điện



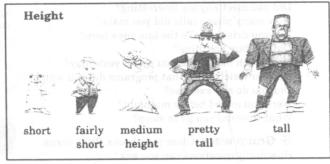
What does he look like?

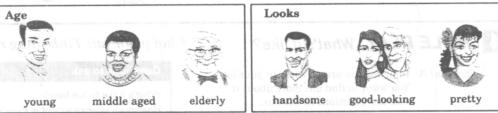
Trông anh ấy như thế nào?

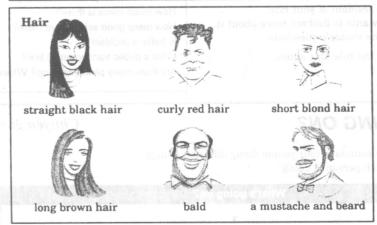
Từ vưng: Về bề ngoài

WORD POWER Appearance

A Look at these expressions. Can you add three more words or expressions to describe people? Write them in the box below.







Other words or expressions

B Pair work Choose at least four expressions to describe yourself and your partner. Then compare. Do you agree?

- A: You have curly blond hair and a beard. You're young and good-looking.
- B: I agree!/I don't agree. My hair isn't very curly.

Me	My partner
Compare your answ	B Part, Work
someone is shaving so. I think someone	
	.,

bookstore (n) drugstore (n)

['buksto:] ['drAgsto:] laduari cửa hàng sách

2 CONVERSATION Describing someone

Đàm thoại: Miêu tá một người



Clerk: Good afternoon. Can I help you? Jean: Yes, I'm looking for someone.

His name is Martin Bock. I'm afraid I missed him.

Clerk: Well, what does he look like? Jean: Let's see. He's about 35, I guess. He's pretty tall, with red hair.

Clerk: Oh, are you Jean Taylor?

Jean: Yes, that's right!

Clerk: He asked for you a few minutes ago.
I think he's in the restaurant.

Jean: Thanks. I'll go and look for him.



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

General appearance What does he look like? Does he wear glasses? Does he have a mustache? Mage How old is he? Ceneral appearance He's pretty tall, with red hair. Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

Hair
What color is her hair?
How long is her hair?
Height
How tall is she?
Light brown.
She has dark brown hair.
It's medium length.

She's fairly short.
She's 152 cm (five feet).

A Write questions to match these statements. Then compare with a partner.

He's in his twenties.

1		My brother is 26.
_	1	I III 1/3 CIII (live leet eight).
		duma has prown hair.
A		140, Sile wears contents
4. E		He's tall and very handsome
о. С		I have brown eyes.

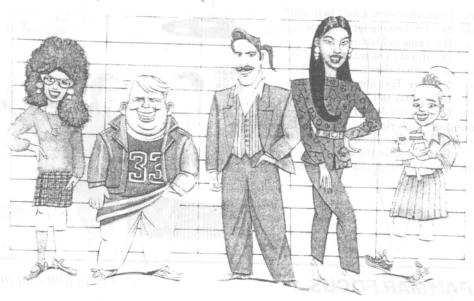
B *Pair work* Write five questions about your teacher's or a classmate's appearance. Then take turns asking and answering your questions.

What	color	is	Aki's	hair?

WHO IS IT?

in bit of WERSATION Describing someone

A Listen to the speakers describe these people. Number the people from 1 to 5.



B Pair work Choose a person in your class. Don't tell your partner who it is. Take turns. Ask questions to guess the person your partner chose

- A: Is it a man or a woman?
- B: A man.
- A: How tall is he?
- B: He's fairly short.
- A: What color is his hair?
- B: ...



Find the differences

Compare two pictures of a party. Student A turns to page IC-12. Student B turns to page IC-14.

5 WRITING

A Write a description of a person in your class. Don't put the person's name on it.

He's in his twenties. He's quite good-looking. He's tall, and he has short blond hair. He's wearing a red shirt, a black jacket, and khaki pants. He's sitting next to the window

B Group work Read your description to the group. Can they guess who you are describing?

park (n) pollution (n) crime (n)

[pa:k] [po'lu:In] [kraim]

công viên sư ô nhiễm tội pham/tôi ác

6 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Which of these items are in style now? out of style? What are three more things that are in style today? What are two things you wear now that you didn't wear five years ago?

Đàm thoại: Nhân diện người 7 CONVERSATION Identifying people

A Listen and practice.

Sarah: Hi, Raoul! Good to see you!

Where's Margaret? Raoul: Oh, she couldn't make it.

She went to a concert

with Alex.

Sarah: Oh! Well, why don't you go and talk to Judy? She doesn't

know anyone here.

Raoul: Judy? Which one is she? Is she the woman wearing

glasses over there?

Sarah: No, she's the tall one in jeans She's standing near the window.

Raoul: Oh, I'd like to meet her.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

Can you label Kevin, Michiko, Rosa, and John in the picture?

characteristic (n) central square (n)

['sentrol skweo]

[,kærikto'ristik] stak od som dặc điểm/đặc trưng do so quảng trường trung tâm

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tam ngữ

Modifiers with participles and prepositions **Participles** Who's Rapul? He's the man wearing glasses. Which one is Raoul? He's the one talking to Sarah. Prepositions Who's Sarah? She's the women with the short black hair Which one is Judy? She's the tall one in leons. Who are the Smiths? They re the people next to the window. Which ones are the Smiths?

on the couch

A Rewrite these statements using modifiers with participles or prepositions. Then compare with a partner.

They're the ones

	Jim is the tall guy. He's wearing glasses. Jim is the tall guy wearing glasses. Bob and Louise are the good-looking couple. They're talking to the
2.	Bob and Louise are the good-looking couple. They're talking to Jim.
3.	Lynne is the young woman. She's in a T-shirt and jeans.
4.	Maria is the attractive woman. She's sitting to the left of Carlos.
5.	Tom is the serious-looking person. He's listening to Maria.
	Pair work Complete these questions and add two questions of ur own. Use the names of people in your class. Then take turns king and answering the questions.
۷.	Who is

9 PRONUNCIATION Contrastive stress

Phát âm: Trong t tuong ph

A Div Listen and practice. Notice how the stress changes to emphasize a contrast.

- A: Is Raoul the one wearing the red shirt?
- A: Is Judy the short one in jeans?
- B: No, he's the one wearing the black shirt.
- B: No, she's the tall one in yeans.

B Mark the stress changes in these conversations. Listen and check. Then practice the conversations.

- 1. A: Is Rose the one sitting next to Kate?
- 2. A: Is Brian the man on the couch?
- B: No, she's the one standing next to Kate.
- B: No, Brian's the man behind the couch.

10 READING

LLE LO Prashions

What kinds of clothing styles do you like to wear?
Do you like to "dress up" or "dress down"?

Teenagers who listen to the same music often have a common "look." One hot style in music and fashion is hip-hop. Hip-hop is a type of urban music with a heavy beat. The lyrics are very important in this music. Hip-hop fashions are large or loose-fitting street clothes. The style includes baggy jeans, sweatshirts, hiking boots, and baseball caps (usually worn backward). However, teens add other clothing items like flannel shirts, jackets with sports logos, and athletic shoes. In the hip-hop style, boys and girls dress the same.

African American kids in Detroit and Chicago first made hip-hop fashions popular – they wore baggy street clothes to dance clubs. Then North American and European bands

also began wearing this style. These bands influenced one another's music and clothing. This mixture made hip-hop into an international fashion sensation.

Hip-hop is now a teen fashion from Britain to Japan. Melanie Borrow, 17, of Manchester, England, says, "My pride and joy in life are my Levi's jeans." In Japan, hip-hop is replacing the usual outfit for teenage girls: blouses and skirts with cartoon characters on them. And in the United States, teens spend a lot of money on hip-hop fashions. David Bowen, 17, of Evanston, Illinois, has five pairs of hiking boots at \$100 each. Bowen says, "They're popular because a lot of hip-hop performers wear them. They even rap about them."

A Read the article. Then look at these pictures and label them. According to the article, which of the clothing items are hip-hop fashions? Check (✓) the correct items.











baggy jeans











B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Do you ever listen to urban or hip-hop music?
- 2. Do you ever wear hip-hop fashions? Describe what you wear.
- 3. What do you wear when you dress up or dress down?

rob (v) clean (v) [rɔb] [kli:n] án trôm lau chùi



Have you ever ridden a camel?

1 SNAPSHOT

Bạn đã từng cưỡi lạc đà chưa?

Thông tin nhanh

Đàm thoại: Đi chơi



Talk about these questions.

Which of these activities would you like to try? Why?
What are three unusual things you can do in your city or country?

2 CONVERSATION Going out

A Listen and practice.

Ted: Are you enjoying your trip to New Orleans?

Brenda: Oh, yes. I really like it here.

Ted: Would you like to do something tonight?

Brenda: Sure. I'd love to.

Ted: Let's see. Have you been to a jazz club yet? Brenda: Yes. I've already been to several clubs here.

Ted: OK. What about an evening riverboat tour?

Brenda: Uh, actually, I've gone twice this week.

Ted: So, what do you want to do?

Brenda: Well, I haven't been to the theater in

a long time.

Ted: Oh, OK. I hear there's a terrific show at the Saenger Theater.

Brenda: Great! Let's make a reservation

B 🖃 Listen to Ted call the Saenger Theater.

- 1. What's playing tonight?
- 2. Where is the theater?

wear (v) visitor (n) sleep (v)

[web] ['vizito] [sli:p]

mặc khách thăm quan ngủ

usetul expressions

three times every day

once

twice

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ phượp

Present perfect; already, yet The present perfect is formed with the verb have + the past participle form of a verb. Contractions = l've I have Yes I've already been to several Have you been to a jazz club? have not a haven't No, they haven't seen it yet she has = she's Have they seen the play? Yes, she's gone twice this week Has she gone on a riverboat tour? has not = hasn't No, he hasn't called them Has he called his parents lately? Irregular past participles Regular past participles nove - had be - been call --- called make -- made → done hike - hiked see eaten eat -jog → Jog**ged** gone , tried

For a list of irregular past participles, see the appendix at the back of the book

A How many times have you done these things in the past week?

Write your answers. Then compare with a partner.

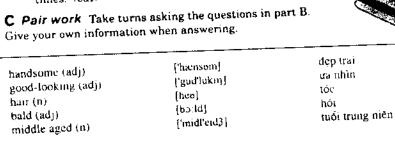
- 1. clean the house make your bed
- 4. do laundry 5. wash the dishes
- 3. cook dinner
- 6. go grocery shopping

I've cleaned the house once this week OR I haven't cleaned the house this week.

B Complete these conversations using the present perfect.

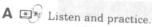
Then practice with a partner.

- 1. A: Have you done much exercise this week? B: Yes, I already to aerobics
 - class four times. (be)
- 2. A: Have you played any sports this month?
 - B: No, I the time. (have)
- 3. A: How many movies have you been to this month?
 - B: Actually, I any yet. (see)
- 4. A: Have you been to any interesting parties lately? B: No, I to any parties for a while. (go)
- 5. A: Have you called any friends today?
- B: Yes, 1...... already three calls. (make)
- 6. A: How many times have you gone out to eat this week? B; I at fast-food restaurants a couple of times. (eat)



CONVERSATION Describing events Dam thoại: Miêu tá

các sư kiên



Dave: So, how was your weekend? Sue: Oh, really good. I went to see David Copperfield.

Dave: The magician?

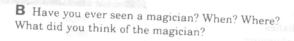
Sue: That's right. Have you ever seen him? Dave: Yes, I have. I saw his show in Las Vegas last year. He's terrific.

Sue: Yeah. He does some incredible things. Dave: Have you ever been to Las Vegas?

Sue: No, I've never been there.

Dave: You should go sometime. It's an interesting

city, and the hotels are wonderful.





GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Present perfect and past tense

Use the present perfect for an indefinite time in the past. Use the past tense for a specific event in the past. Yes. I have.

Have you ever seen a magic show?

I saw a magic show last year.

No, I haven't. But my sister saw David Copperfield.

Have you ever been to Las Vegas? Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

I went there in September. I've never been there

A Complete these conversations. Use the present perfect and the past tense of the verbs given and short answers. Then practice with

1. A:you ever.....skiing? a(go) all ma and an all and an all a

B: Yes, I..... I..... skiing once in Colorado.

2. A:you ever.....something valuable? (lose) and some below the

B: No, I...... But my brother..... his camera on a trip once.

3. A: you ever........... a traffic ticket? (get) and good and good good.

B: Yes, I...... Once I.........a ticket and had to pay \$50.

4. A:you ever....... a body-building competition? (see)

B: Yes, I Ithe National Championships this year.

5. A:.....you ever......late for an important appointment? (be) B: No, I But my sister.........30 minutes late for her wedding!

B Pair work Take turns asking the questions in part A. Give your own information when answering.

guess (v)

đoán

6 PRONUNCIATION Have

Phát âm: Have

A Listen and practice. In questions, have is usually reduced to /həv/. In short answers, have is not reduced.

- A: Have you ever been in a traffic accident?
- B: Yes, I have.
- A: Have you ever eaten Greek food?
- B: No, I haven't.

B *Pair work* Write four questions like those in part A. Take turns asking and answering the questions. Pay attention to the pronunciation of have.



7 LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to Clarice and Karl talk about interesting things they've done recently. Complete the chart.

	Where he/she went	Why he/she liked it
Clarice		
Karl		The specific than a serie and process to a

8 WORD POWER Collocation

Từ vưng: Kết hợp từ

A Find two words or phrases in the list that are usually paired with each verb.

a camel a hill kiwi fruit a mountain rice wine a truck goat's milk your keys a motorcycle raw fish a sports car your wallet

climb
drink
drive
eat
lose
ride

B Write the past participle forms of the verbs above. Then compare with a partner.

man (n) [mæn] woman (n) ['wumən] jacket (n) ['dʒækit] đàn ông phụ nữ áo khoác

9 HAVE YOU EVER ...?

Ban dâ từng...?

A Group work Ask your classmates questions about each of the things in Exercise 8. Take notes on the answers.

A: Have you ever ridden a camel?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Really? Where were you?

B: .

B Class activity Tell the class one interesting thing you learned about a classmate.



10 WRITING I've never

Viết: Tôi chưa bao giờ...

A Write a paragraph describing something that you've never done but would like to do. Explain why you want to do it.

I've never gone white-water rafting. I'd like to because it sounds exciting. My brother was on vacation in Canada two years ago and decided to try it...

interchange 10

Lifestyles survey

Is your lifestyle easygoing and relaxed or busy and fast-paced? Turn to page IC-13.

B Pair work Exchange your compositions. Take turns asking and answering questions with a partner.

fashion (n) miniskirt (n) tights (n)

['fæʃn] ['miniskø:t] [taits] thời trang váy ngắn quần bó sát

11 READING

Đọc

Taking the Risk

Have you ever participated in a risky sport? What was it?

Sports World magazine spoke with Jenny Adams, Tom Barker, and Ray Lee about risky sports.

SW: Hang gliding is a dangerous sport. Jenny, what do you enjoy about the sport, and have you ever had an accident?

Jenny: No, I've never been seriously injured. Maybe I've just been lucky. Once, my glider turned upside down, and I lost control. I almost crashed, but I parachuted away just in time. And I've always felt hang gliding is quite safe though landing is sometimes difficult. But it's fantastic to be able to fly like a bird!

SW: Tom, you've been mountain climbing for years now. What are some of the dangers that you've experienced?

Tom: High altitudes are hard on the human body. I've experienced lack of oxygen, tiredness, and dehydration. I've lived through storms, avalanches, and strong winds. But that's what I like about mountain climbing – overcoming danger.

SW: What exactly are the bends, Ray? And have you ever experienced them while scuba diving?

Ray: You get the bends when you've been deep under water.

If you come up out of the water too quickly, bubbles form in your blood. The bends can be serious, and they can even cause death. But the bends are rare. Scuba diving isn't really dangerous. And it lets you explore another world.





A Read the article. What do Jenny, Tom, and Ray enjoy about the sports they describe? What is dangerous about each sport? Complete the chart.

17.45.15	Sport	What they enjoy	The danger(s)
1. Jenny	hot and humid in the		
2. Tom			
3. Ray	go off to Jean end of the on	8	

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Have you ever tried any of the sports described? What was it like?
- 2. Which of the sports would you like to try? Why?

attractive (adj) guy (n) [o'træktiv] [gai] hấp dẫn/thu hút gã trai

It's a very exciting city!

Thật là một thành phố hấp dẫn!

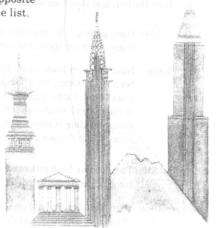
Từ vưng: Tính từ

WORD POWER Adjectives

A Pair work Match each word in column A with its opposite in column B. Then add two more pairs of adjectives to the list.

A	B	
1. beautiful	a. bori	ing
2. big	b. dan	gerous
3. cheap	c. dirt	у
4. clean	d. exp	ensive
5. hot	e. stre	ssful
6. interesting	f. sma	ll
7. safe	g. ugly	
8. relaxing	h. cold	
9		
10	j	William III

B Choose four adjectives from part A that describe your city. Then compare with a partner.



CONVERSATION Describing cities

Đàm thoại: Miêu ta các thành phố



A Listen and practice.

Linda: Where in Canada are you from, Ken?

Ken: I'm from Toronto.

Linda: Oh, I've never been there. What's it like?

Ken: It's a fairly big city, but it's not too big.

The nightlife is good, too. Linda: Is it expensive there?

Ken: No, it's not too bad.

Linda: And what's the weather like in Toronto?

Ken: Well, it's pretty cold in the winter, and very hot and humid in the summer.

It's nice in the spring and fall, though.

Listen to the rest of the conversation.

What does Ken say about entertainment in Toronto?

influence	(n)/(v)
pride (n)	
joy (n)	

ảnh hưởng/tác dung niềm tư hào sư vui sướng

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Adverbs and adjectives; conjunctions

It's a very exciting city. It's too expensive, however.
It's not very exciting. It's really beautiful, though.
It's a fairly big city, but it's not too big.
It's pretty safe, and it's very friendly.

A Match the questions with the answers. Then practice the conversations.

- What's Hong Kong like?
 Is it an interesting place?
- 2. Do you like your hometown?
- What's Sydney like?I've never been there.
- 4. Have you ever been to São Paulo?

- a. Oh, really? It's beautiful, and it's very clean. It has a great harbor and beautiful beaches.
- Yes, many times. It's a very modern city.
 It's too hot in the summer, though.
- c. Yes, it is. It's very exciting.

 It's really crowded, however.
- d. No, I hate it. It's not too small, but it's pretty boring. That's why I moved away.

B Pair work What do you think of these cities? Take turns describing them.

"San Francisco is a really exciting city, and it's very clean."



4. LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to Joyce and Nick talk about their hometowns. What do they say? Check () the correct boxes.

	Big	g?	Interes	sting?	Expen	sive?	Beau	tiful?
1. Joyce	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	No
2. Nick			d rion b			out Jund	SVIII	

5 HOME SWEET HOME

Quê hương, quê hương mên yeu

Group work Take turns. Ask one student about his or her hometown. Then ask follow-up questions to get more information.

What's your city like?

Is it an interesting place?

Is it very big?

Is it safe? Is it clean? Is it very expensive?

What's the nightlife like? What's the weather like?

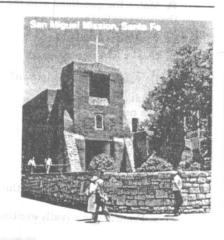
Do you like it there?

6 WRITING

Viết

Pair work Think of an interesting city in your country. Write a short composition about it. Then exchange compositions. Can your partner suggest any information to add?

My favorite city in the United States is Santa Fe. It's in New Mexico. It's an old city with lots of interesting Native American and Spanish buildings. It's fairly small, and it's really beautiful.



7 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Source: World Tourism Organization

Why do you think France has the most tourists?
Which countries on this list would you most like to visit? Rank the countries from 1 to 10.
Which country did you rank number 1? Why?

river boat tour (adj) camel (n) actually (adv)

['riva bout tua]

[ˈkæməl] [ˈæktjuəli] du lịch bằng thuyển trên sông con lạc đà thực sự

8 CONVERSATION Giving suggestions Dam thoai: Neu de nghị

A Listen and practice.

David: Can you tell me a little about Mexico City?

Maria: Sure I can. What would you like to know?

David: Well, what's a good time to visit?

Maria: I think you can go anytime. The weather is always nice.

David: Oh, good! And what should I see there?

Maria: Well, you should visit the National Museum and go to the Palace of Fine Arts.

David: What else?

Maria: Oh, you shouldn't miss the Pyramid of the Sun. It's very interesting.

David: It all sounds really exciting!

B E Listen to the rest of the conversation.

1. Where is David from?

2. What should you do there?



Trong tâm ngữ pháp GRAMMAR FOCUS

Modal verbs can and should in

Can you tell me about Mexico?

What can you do there?

Should I go to the Palace of Fine Arts? What should I see there?

Yes, I can./No, I can't.

You can see the Palace of Fine Arts

Yes, you should./No, you shouldn't. You should visit the National Museum. You shouldn't miss the Pyramid of the Sun.

A Complete these sentences about things to do in France. Use the verbs from the list

1. You Paris.

2. You the Eiffel Tower.

3. You French food.

4. You shopping at the flea markets. 5. You a boat ride on the Seine River.

6. You a morning at the Louvre Museum.

B Pair work Write answers to these questions about your country. Then compare with a partner.

1. What time of year should you go there?

2. What are three things you can do there?

3. Can you buy anything special?

4. What shouldn't a visitor miss?

5. What shouldn't people do?

should spend can see can go should visit should try

shouldn't miss

1 You should go in the spring.

grocery (n) week (n) month (n)

['grousori] [wi:k] $[m\Lambda n\theta]$

cửa hàng tạp hoá tuần tháng

10 PRONUNCIATION Can't and shouldn't Phát âm: Can't và shouldn't

A Listen and practice these sentences. Notice how the t in can't and shouldn't is pronounced.

You can't walk home on the streets late at night You shouldn't miss the night markets. You can't go shopping on Sundays. You shouldn't swim at the beaches.

B Class activity Are any of these statements true about your city?



City guide

Make a guide to fun and interesting places in your city. Turn to page IC-15.

LISTENING

Nghe

A Listen to three speakers talk about Japan, Argentina, and Italy. Complete the chart.

	Capital city	What visitors should see or do
1. Japan		What shoyed was do there?
2. Argentina	a	
3. Italy		

B Listen again. One thing about each country is incorrect. What is it?

ON VACATION

Di nghi

Group work Has anyone in your group visited an interesting country or place in your country? Find out more about it. Start like this and ask questions like the ones below.

A: I visited Malaysia last summer.

B: Did you enjoy it?

A: Yes, I did.

C: ...

What's the best time of year to visit? What's the weather like then? What should tourists see and do there? What special foods can you eat? What's the shopping like? What things should people buy? What else can visitors do there?



magician (n) interesting (adj) appointment (n)

[məˈd3iʃn] ['intristin] [a'pointment] nhà ảo thuật thú vi cuôc hen

Doc

FAMOUS CITIES

What cities are famous in your country? Why are they famous?



This beautiful city in northeastern Italy is built on about 120 small islands. The city has no roads. Instead, people use boats to travel along the canals. Flatbottomed boats called gondolas were once the main means of transportation, but today motorboats are more popular. You should see St. Mark's Square – the center of activity in this city. It has wonderful Renaissance buildings.

Which city:

Paris

☐ Venice

2

This American city is the main business and cultural center of the Midwest. It is famous for its music, opera, and theater. It also has excellent museums. When shopping in this city, you can visit a long row of fashionable stores on North Michigan Avenue. This area is called the Magnificent Mile. One of the world's tallest buildings, the John Hancock Center, is also on this avenue.

Which city:

San Francisco

Chicago

3



Travelers use many words to describe this South American city: beautiful, glamorous, sunny, friendly, and exciting. It is the city of the Carnival, when everyone dances the samba in the streets. Tourists also love to visit its fabulous beaches and mountains. You shouldn't miss the National Park of Tijuca – one of the largest city parks in the world.

Which city:

Me	xico	Ci	ty

Havana

A Read descriptions of the three cities. Check (✓) the correct city to match each description.

B Complete the chart with information about each city. Then compare with a partner.

Where is this city?		What should visitors do there?
1	akiow ymaen	Transa man viava qua a
2		
3		. 18. William warming 18.

C Class activity Which city would you like to visit? Why?

climb (v)	[klaim]	trèo
lose (v)	[lu:z]	mất
ride (v)	[raid]	cưỡi/đi

It really works!

SNAPSHOT

Nó thật sự công hiệu

Thông tin nhanh

Common Health Complaints

















Source: National Center for Health Statistics

Talk about these questions.

Have you had any of these health problems recently? Which ones? How many times have you been sick in the past year? What do you do when you have a headache? a cold? insomnia?

2 CONVERSATION Health problems

A Listen and practice.

Joan: Hi, Craig! How are you?

Craig: Not so good. I have a terrible cold. Joan: Really? That's too bad! You should

be at home in bed. It's really important

to get a lot of rest.

Craig: Yeah, you're right.

Joan: And have you taken anything for it?

Craig: No, I haven't.

Joan: Well, it's helpful to chop up some garlic and cook it in chicken stock. Then drink

a cup every half hour. It really works!

Craig: Ugh!

B Listen to advice from two more of Craig's co-workers.

What do they suggest?

decide (v)

survey (n)

[di'said] b\mu ['so:vei]

quyết định cuộc thăm dò/khảo sát

Đàm thoại: Các vấn để sức khỏe



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS o mod bessules MOVIA Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Infinitive complements (4)

What should you do for a cold?

It's important to get a lot of rest. It's a good idea to take some vitamin C. It's useful to get some cold medicine. It's helpful to chop up some garlic and cook it.

A Look at these health problems. Choose several pieces of good advice for each problem.

Advice

- 1. a sore throat 2. a cough
- 3. a backache
 - 5. a toothache

Problems

- 8. the flu
- 4. a fever
- 6. a bad headache 7. a burn
- a. take some vitamin C
- b. put some ointment on it
- c. drink lots of liquids
- d. go to bed and rest
- e. put a heating pad on it
- f. put it under cold water
- g. take some aspirin h. get some medicine
 - from the drugstore
 - i . see the dentist
 - i. see the doctor



a burn

a sore throat

B Group work Talk about the problems in part A and give advice. What other advice do you have for each problem?

- A: What should you do for a sore throat?
- B: It's a good idea to get some medicine from the drugstore.
- C: Yes. And it's important to drink lots of liquids.
- D: Well, I think it's useful to manufacture and standard M C Write advice for these problems. (You will use this advice in Exercise 4.)

a cold insomnia sore eyes sore muscles stress

For a cold, it's a good idea to



risk (n) mountain (n) dangerous (adj)

[risk] ['mauntin] ['deind3res] rùi ro núi nguy hiểm

4 PRONUNCIATION Reduced form of to Phát âm: Dang rút gọn của to

A Listen and practice. In conversation, to is usually reduced to /tə/.

A: What should you do for a fever?

B: It's important to take some aspirin.

And it's a good idea to see the doctor.

B Pair work Now look back at part C of Exercise 3. Ask for and give advice about the health problems you wrote about. Pay attention to the pronunciation of to.



Talk radio

Imagine you are a talk show host. Give advice to some callers. Turn to page IC-16.

5 WHAT DID YOU DO?

Ban làm gì?

A Pair work Take turns talking about these problems.

a stomachache an insect bite a sore throat the hiccups

A: Have you ever had a stomachache?

B: Sure I have. Just last night, actually.

A: What did you do?

B: I took some antacid.

B Group work Compare with other pairs. Tell what you did for each problem.



Hydrocortisone Cream



6 WORD POWER Containers and medicines

A Use the words in the list to complete these expressions. Then compare with a partner.

Từ vựng: Vật chứa và thuộc

bottle box can package tube

1. a of ointment
2. a of aspirin
3. a of bandages
4. a of foot spray
5. a of tissues

B What is one more thing you can buy in each of the containers above?

C What common items do you have in your medicine cabinet?



7 CONVERSATION Giving suggestions

Đàm thoại: Nêu để nghi



A Listen and practice.

Pharmacist: Hi. Can I help you?

Mrs. Webb: Yes, please. Could I have

something for a cough? I think I'm getting a cold.

Pharmacist: Well, I suggest a box of these

cough drops. And you should

get a bottle of vitamin C, too.

Mrs. Webb: Thank you. And what do you

have for dry skin?

Pharmacist: Try some of this new lotion.

It's very good.

Mrs. Webb: OK. Thanks a lot.

B E Listen to the pharmacist talk to the next customer.

What does the customer want?

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Modal verbs can, could, may for requests; suggestions

Can/May I help you?

Can I have a box of cough drops? Could I have something for a sore throat?

May I have a bottle of aspirin?

What do you have/suggest for dry skin?

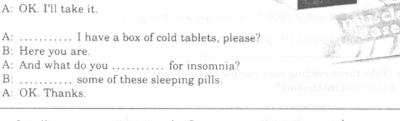
Try some of this lotion.

I suggest some ointment.

You should get some skin cream.

Complete these conversations with the verbs can, could, may, have, suggest, try, or should. Then compare and practice with a partner.

- 1. A: I help you?
 - B: Yes. I have something for tired eves?
 - A: Sure. I a bottle of eye drops.
- 2. A: What do you for sore muscles?
 - B: You try a tube of this ointment. It's excellent.
- 3. A: I have a box of cold tablets, please?



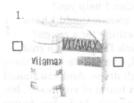
safe (adj) dirty (adj)		[seif] ['do:ti]
boring (adj) humid (adj)	than ib	['bɔ:riŋ] ['hju:mid]

an toàn bẩn buổn chán ẩm ướt

9 LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to people talking about things in a drugstore. Check () the items they buy.









10 ROLE PLAY Can I help you?

Chơi phân vai: Ông cần gì?

Student A: You are a customer in a drugstore. You need:

something for a sunburn something for sore muscles something for a sore throat

Ask for some suggestions.

Student B: You are a pharmacist in a drugstore. A customer needs some things.

Make some suggestions.







a can of sunburn spray

a tube of muscle ointment

a bottle of throat spray

Change roles and try the role play again. Make up your own information.

11 WRITING

A Write about an interesting home or folk remedy.

I have a good home remedy for a sore throat. I learned about it from my grandmother. Cut slices of meat, put pepper on them, and then tie them around your throat with a cloth. It's also a good idea to go to bed and rest. This always works (my grandmother says!).

B Pair work Take turns reading your compositions. Which home remedy is the most interesting?

crowded (adj) hate (v) move away (v) ['kraudid] [heit] [mu:v o'wei] đông đúc ghét/chán đi mất

Grandma knows best!

When you have a minor health problem, do you usually go to the doctor, get something from the drugstore, or use a home remedy?

hen people have a cold, a fever, or the flu, they usually go to the doctor for help, or they get some medicine from the drugstore. But many people also use home remedies for common illnesses. Here are some simple home remedies.

Bee stings and insect bites

Wash the sting or bite. Put some meat tenderizer on a handkerchief and then put the handkerchief on the bite for half an hour. To avoid insect bites, it's helpful to eat garlic or take garlic pills.

Burns

Put the burn under cold water or put a cold handkerchief on it. Then apply aloe vera gel to the burn. It's important not to put ice on the burn.

Colds

Lots of people eat hot chicken soup when they have a cold. They find it clears the head and the nose. Some people rub oil on their chest for a cold. Other people drink a mixture of red pepper, hot water, sugar, lemon juice, and milk or vinegar.

Cough

Drink warm liquids or take some honey

Headaches

Apply an ice pack or cold cloth to your head, or splash your face with cold water. It's also a good idea to put your hands into hot water and leave them there for several minutes. Also, you shouldn't read or watch TV.

Insomnia

Drink a large glass of warm milk. It's also a good idea to soak in a warm bath.

A Pair work Read the article. Then cover the article and complete the chart. What problems are these things good for?

Advice	Problem
. hot chicken soup/rubbing ail on your chest	
2. a warm bath/warm milk	
3. garlic/meat tenderizer	
. an ice pack/putting your hands in hot water	
5. cold water/aloe vera gel	
3. honey/warm liquids	
	Advice 1. hot chicken soup/rubbing oil on your chest 2. a warm bath/warm milk 3. garlic/meat tenderizer 4. an ice pack/putting your hands in hot water 5. cold water/aloe vera gel 6. honey/warm liquids

B Group work Do you use any of these remedies? What other home remedies do you use?

tourist (n)
rank (v)
nightlife (n)

['tubrist] [ræŋk] ['naitlait] khách du lịch xếp hạng/phân hạng cuộc sống về đêm

Review of Units 9-12

Ôn tập các bài 9-12

Việc đó như thế nào?

WHAT WAS IT LIKE?

Group work Ask these questions around the group.

Have you ever . . . ?

been on a camping trip gotten a famous person's autograph given first aid to someone been on a blind date lost your credit cards gone windsurfing been in an accident had food poisoning kept a diary fainted

When someone answers "Yes," he or she explains what happened, and the other students ask for more information.

- A: Have you ever gone windsurfing?
- B: Yeah, I have. I tried it last year in Hawaii. It was really fun!
- C: What was it like? Was it difficult?
- B: Yes, it was at first. Has anyone else ever gone windsurfing?

D: . . .



2 ROLE PLAY Missing person

Student A: You are visiting an amusement park with your English class.

One of your classmates is lost. You are talking to a security officer. Answer the officer's questions and describe one of your classmates. (Don't give the student's name.)

Student B: You are a security officer at an amusement park. Someone is talking to you about a lost classmate. Ask questions to complete the form. Then look around the class. Can you find the lost student?

Change roles and try the role play again.

pælis

tauol

piromid]

Chơi phân vai: Người bi lạc

	Negotity to synthetic sens	
	3200	
701 G3M 8	EG S	A.
21101 neo	Se all property of the second second	
A PARTIE .		7
Jearlo 11 ny	no no pro 1 200 miles and 1 100 miles	(2)
1 -	12/2	A.
1		-6
	gans/ment/estretter	51
intow toric		
	MISSING PERSONS REPORT	0 0
	M	0
		0
		. 0
osadi To) meight	0
		. 0
1980	Eyes	. 0
		0
	Clothing	. 0

palace (n)	jačp b
tower (n)	oộno [
pyramid (n)	. [

James | cung điện thai tháp kim tự tháp

WHICH ONE IS BILL?

Người nào là Bill?

Pair work Look at this picture of a party. Write sentences identifying each person.







Bill is the man in the black shirt. / Bill is the one sitting next to Louisa.

4. LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to Jenny talking about Honolulu. What does she say about these things? Complete the chart.

		What she says about
1.	size	e foods Auveryou tried? Which would you like to try?
2.	weather	ends of foods do you like?
3.	prices	
4.	a famous place	RSATION Going out for disseri-

DIFFICULT SITUATIONS

Tình huống khó khăn

useful expressions

It's useful to

It's helpful to

You can

You should

It's a good idea to .

A Group work What do you do in these situations? Discuss each situation using expressions from the box. Write down your ideas.

What do you do when . . .?

- 1. you have an argument with a friend
- 2. it's 2:00 A.M. and you can't sleep
- 3. you feel very stressed
- 4. you can't remember someone's name
- 5. you need to study, but you can't concentrate

1. It's a good idea to apologize right away.

B Class activity Read your group's ideas to the class.

miss (v) summer (n)

[mis] [6mAz'] Inaventinay lỡ/nhớ mùa hè

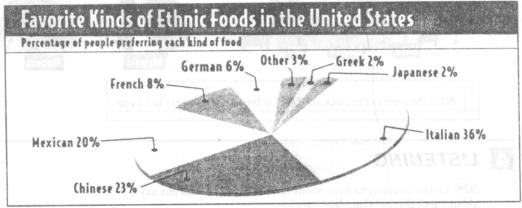
13

May I take your order, please?

SNAPSHOT

Ông gọi món gì ạ?

Thông tin nhanh



Source: National Restaurant Association

Talk about these questions.

Are there restaurants in your city that serve these kinds of foods? Which of the foods have you tried? Which would you like, to try? What other kinds of foods do you like?

2 CONVERSATION Going out for dinner

Đàm thoại: Đi ăn tôi

A Listen and practice.

Sandy: Say, do you want to go out to dinner tonight?

Bob: Sure. Where would you like to go?

Sandy: Well, what do you think of Indian food?

Bob: I love it, but I'm not really in the mood for it today.

Sandy: Yeah. I'm not either, I guess. It's a bit spicy.

Bob: Hmm. How do you like Japanese food?

Sandy: Oh, I like it a lot.

Bob: I do, too. And I know a nice Japanese restaurant near here – it's called Iroha.

Sandy: Oh, I've always wanted to go there.

Bob: Terrific! Let's go!

B . Listen to the rest of the conversation.

- 1. What time do they decide to have dinner? Why?
- 2. Where do they decide to meet?

motorboat (n)
museum (n)

[kø'næl] ['moutobout] [mju:'ziom] kênh thuyền máy viên bảo tàng



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

So, too, neither, either

Hike Japanese food a lot. So do 1./1 do, too. Really? I don't like it very much.

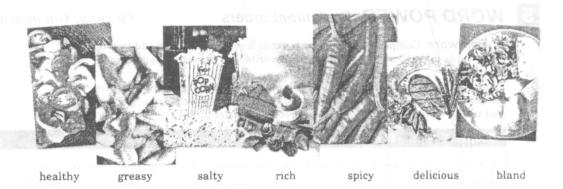
I'm crazy about dessert. So am 1./1 am. too. Oh. I'm not at all.

I can eat really spicy food. So can I./I can, too. Oh. I can't.

I don't like greasy food. Neither do I./I don't either. Oh I like it a lot

I'm not in the mood for Indian food. Neither am 1./I'm not either. Really? I am.

I can't stand fast food. Neither can I. / I can't either. Oh. I love it!



A Write responses to show agreement with these statements. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. I'm not crazy about French food..... 3. I think Mexican food is delicious. 5. I don't like salty food. 6. I'm in the mood for something spicy. 8. I don't enjoy rich food very much. 9. I always eat healthy food. 10. I can't eat bland food.
- B Pair work Take turns responding to the statements in part A again. Give your own opinion when responding.
- C Write statements about these things. (You will use the statements in Exercise 4.)
- 1. two kinds of food you like
- 2. two kinds of food you can't stand
- 3. two kinds of food you are in the mood for

PRONUNCIATION Stress in responses Phát âm: Trọng âm trong câu đáp

A Listen and practice. The last word of each response is usually stressed.

So do Í.

I do. tóo.

Neither am I. I'm not éither.

Neither do 1.

I don't éither. I am. too.

So can Í. I can, tóo.

Neither can I. I can't éither

B Pair work Take turns reading the statements you wrote in part C of Exercise 3. Pay attention to the stress in your responses.

A: I don't really like greasy food.

B: I don't éither. (Neither do Í.) It's not very healthy.

WORD POWER Restaurant orders

Từ vưng: Goi món ăn

A Pair work Complete the chart with words from the list. Then add two more words to each category. What's your favorite food in each category?

apple pie cole slaw iced tea

cold pasta salad onion soup milk

chicken broth grilled salmon mixed greens

chocolate cake hamburger & fries roast turkey

ice cream clam chowder

Soups	Salads	Main dishes	Desserts	Beverages
delicions .		dan yile	VERSTS	zdefood
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
•••••		eniont with chose a		## ## ## ## ## ### ### #### ##########
			···· randring unstreet	a saparaa majihi 1

B What foods do you think these people like best? Use items from the chart above or your own ideas.



2.





C Listen to each of the people above talking about their favorite foods and take notes. How similar were your guesses?

bad (adj) complaint (n) [bæd] [kom'pleint] tổi tệ say lời phàn nàn

6 CONVERSATION Ordering a meal Dam thoại; Gọi món ăn



Waiter: May I take your order?

Customer: Yes. I'd like a hamburger and a large

order of french fries, please.

Waiter: All right. And would you like a salad?

Customer: Yes, I'll have a mixed green salad. Waiter: OK. What kind of dressing would

you like? We have vinaigrette.

Italian, and French.

Customer: Italian, please.

Waiter: And would you like anything to drink?

Customer: Yes, I'd like a large soda, please.



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Modal verbs would and will for requests What would you like to eat? I'd like a hamburger. Contractions I'll have a small salad. |will| = |'1|| would = | 'dWhat kind of dressing would you like? I'd like Italian, please. I'll have French. What would you like to drink? I'd like a large soda.

I'll have coffee

Would you like anything else? Yes, please. I'd like some water No, thank you. That will be all.

Complete this conversation. Then practice with a partner.

Waitress: What.....you like to order? Customer: I.....have the fried chicken.

Waitress:you like rice or potatoes?

Customer: Potatoes, please.

Waitress: What kind of potatoes would you

Mashed, baked, or french fries?

Customer: I.....like french fries.

Waitress: OK. And what will youto drink?

Customer: I guess Ihave a cup of coffee.

Waitress: Would youanything else?

Customer: No, that be all for now, thanks.

Waitress: Would you dessert? Customer: Yes, I.....like ice cream. Waitress: What flavor.....you like?

Customer: Hmm. I.....have chocolate, please.

Waitress: OK. I'll bring it right away.



cough (n) backache (n) fever (n)

flu (n)

['bækeik] ['fi:vo]

[flu:]

bi ho [Inaminic] dau lung con sốt cảm cúm

8 ROLE PLAY In a coffee shop

Chơi phân vai: Trong tiệm cả phe

Student A: You are a customer in a coffee shop.

This is what you want to order for lunch:

tomato and cucumber salad spaghetti and meatballs

garlic bread iced tea with lemon

Student B: You are the waiter or waitress.

Take your customer's order.

Change roles and try the role play again. Make up your own information.



9 LISTENING

Nghe

A Listen to Tom and Tina ordering in a restaurant. What did each of them order? Fill in their orders.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What happened?

Pì	nil's Date	Diner	No. 399825	
			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
• • • • • •				.
	ļ 			. 1
	ļ <i>.</i>			
	ļ			
		,		
	<u> </u>	,		
7	hank	'Hon'	Total	

10 WRITING Restaurant reviews

Viết: Bài nhận xét về nhà hàng

A Have you eaten out at a restaurant recently? How was it? Write a review of the restaurant and the meal you had there.

The Surf and Turf Restaurant

I had lunch at the Surf and Turf Restaurant last week It's a steak and seafood restaurant. I ordered a steak and a Caesar salad. For dessert, I had chocolate cake and coffee. My meal cost about \$24 with the tip.

The waiter was helpful. The coffee wasn't very good, but the salad and steak were delicious. I'd go back to the Surf and Turf.

B Group work Take turns reading your reviews to the group. Is there a restaurant you would like to try?

interchange 13

Are you ready to order?

Have lunch at The Corner Cafe. Student A turns to page IC-17. Students B and C turn to page IC-18.

tissue (n)

ointment (n) bandage (n)

[ˈtiʃuː]

['sintment]

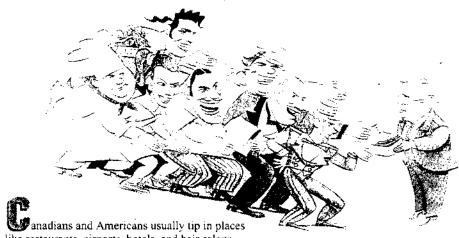
['bændid3]

khán giấy/giấy ăn thuốc mở băng (vét thương)

Doc

To Tip or Not to Tip?

Do you tip for services in your country? When?



anadians and Americans usually tip in place like restaurants, airports, hotels, and hair salons because many people who work in these places get low salaries. A tip shows that the customer is pleased with the service.

At airports, porters usually get a dollar tip for each bag. Hotel bellhops usually get a dollar for carrying one or two suitcases. A hotel door attendant or parking valet also gets about a dollar for getting a taxi or for parking a car. Many people also tip hotel room attendants, especially when they stay in a hotel for several days. They usually leave a dollar for each day.

The usual tip for other kinds of services for example, for taxi drivers, barbers, hairdressers, waiters, and waitresses—is between 10 and 20 percent of the bill. The size of the tip depends on how pleased the customer is. In most restaurants, the check does not include a service charge. If the group is large, however, there may be an added service charge. There is no tipping in cafeterias or last-food restaurants.

A Pair work Read the article. Then talk about these questions.

1. How much should you tip someone in North America who: takes your bag at an airport?

parks your car at a hotel or restaurant? serves you in a fast-food restaurant?

- 2. What tip should you leave for the following:
 - a \$27 haircut?
 - a \$50 restaurant check?
 - a \$14 taxi fare?
- B Group work Do you think tipping is a good or bad custom? Why?

bottle (n) eye-drop (n) [ˈbɔtl] [ai drɔp] cái chai thuộc nhỏ mặt



The biggest and the best!

Lớn nhất và tốt nhất

WORD POWER Geography

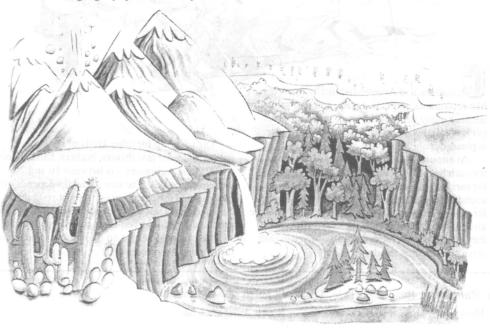
Từ vưng: Đia lý

A Circle the word that doesn't belong in each list. Then compare with a partner.

1. canyon cliff swamp valley 2. lake plateau river sea 3. hill
mountain
volcano
ocean

4. desert forest plains waterfall

B Find examples of some of the words above in this picture. What other geography words can you think of?



C Add two names to these lists. Then compare with a partner.

Mountains	Rivers		Oceans
Mount Everest	the Amazon River	Africa	the Pacific Ocean
		,	50 restammant charte

sunburn (n) tube (n) customer (n) ['sAnbo:n]
[tju:b]
['kAstomo]

cháy nắng tuýp thuốc khách hàng

2 CONVERSATION Describing countries Dam thoại: Miêu tả các nước

Listen and practice.

Paul: I'm going to Australia next year. Aren't

you from "down under," Kelly?

Kelly: That's right.

Paul: I hear there's not much pollution, and the beaches are clean and beautiful.

Kelly: Oh, yes. Australia has some of the most famous beaches in the world – like Bondi Beach.

Paul: What else should I see?

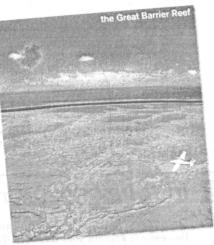
Kelly: Well, the Great Barrier Reef is there.

It's the longest coral reef in the world.

Paul: Wow! It sounds beautiful. You're lucky

to be an Australian.

Kelly: Thanks, but actually, I'm a New Zealander.



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Comparisons with adjectives 😐

Adjective Comparative
large larger
long longer
dry drier
big bigger
beautiful more beautiful
famous more famous
good better
bad worse

Comparative Superlative larger the largest longer the longest drier the driest bigger the biggest

the biggest the most beautiful the most famous the best

the worst

Which country is larger, Canada or China?
Canada is larger than China.

Which country is the largest: Russia, Canada, or China? Russia is the largest country of the three.

What is the most beautiful mountain in the world? I think Fujiyama is the most beautiful.

For more information on comparatives and superlatives, see the appendix at the back of the book.

A Complete questions 1 to 4 with comparatives. Complete questions 5 to 8 with superlatives. Then ask and answer the questions. Check your answers in the appendix.

1. Which country is

2. Which waterfall is

Which city is
 Which lake is

5. Which mountain is

7. Which country is

8. What is

, Monaco or Vatican City? (small)

, Niagara Falls or Angel Falls? (high)

, Hong Kong or Cairo? (crowded)

, the Caspian Sea or Lake Superior? (large)

: Mount McKinley, Mount Everest, or Fujiyama? (tal

river in the world, the Nile or the Amazon? (long)

with tourists: Spain, France, or Italy? (popular)

ocean in the world, the Pacific or the Atlantic? (deep)

B Class activity Write four questions like those in part A about your country or other countries. Then ask your questions around the class.

hot chicken soup (n) garlic (n)

[hot 'tikin su:p] ['ga:lik]

món súp thịt gà nóng tỏi

4 PRONUNCIATION Questions of choice Phát âm: Câu hỏi

chon lua

Listen to the intonation of questions where there is a choice Then practice the questions.

Which country is bigger, China or Russia?

Which is the largest desert in the world, the Australian or the Sahara?

Which country is the most interesting: Korea, Brazil, or France?

5 IN YOUR OPINION Theo ý muốn của bạn

Group work Answer these questions about your country. Be ready to explain your answers. Then compare in a group.

What are the three most interesting places in your country? What's the best time of year to visit? What are the most famous tourist attractions? What's the most beautiful place in your country?

How much do you know?

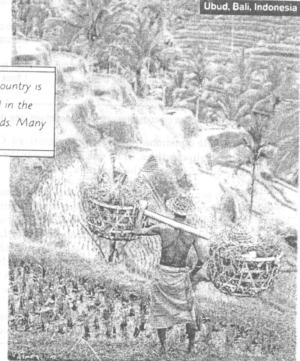
You probably know more than you think you do! Take a quiz. Turn to page IC-19.

6 WRITING

A Write about one of the places or things you discussed in Exercise 5.

> I think the most beautiful place in my country is a town called Ubud on Bali. It's located in the mountains, and there are lots of rice fields. Many artists live and work there.

B Pair work Exchange papers and read each other's compositions.



LISTENING TV game show one a sealand MOVTAZAZV

Nghe



Three people are playing a TV	game show.	Listen	to each	question,
and check (1) the correct answer.				

- 1.

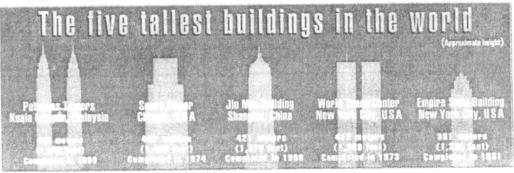
 the Statue of Liberty
 - ☐ the Eiffel Tower
 - ☐ the Empire State Building
- 2. Concorde
 - 747
 - ☐ DC-10

- 3. ☐ gold ☐ butter
 - ☐ feathers
- 4.

 the U.S.
 - ☐ China ☐ Canada
- 5. Moscow
 - ☐ New York
 ☐ Shanghai
- 6. Australia
 - ☐ Argentina
 - ☐ Brazil

SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Source: Council on Tall Buildings and Urban Habitats

Talk about these questions.

Would you like to visit any of these places? Which ones? Why?

Can you identify these buildings in your city?

The tallest building:

The most beautiful building

camping (n)
credit card (n)
windsurfing (n)

[kæmp] ['kreditka:d] ['windso:fiŋ] cắm trại thẻ tín dụng môn lướt sóng

CONVERSATION Distance and measurements

Đàm thoại: Khoảng cách và đo lường

A 💷 Listen and practice.

Paul: So, what's New Zealand like?

Kelly: Oh, it's beautiful. It has lots of farms,

and it's very mountainous.

Paul: Mountainous? Really? I didn't know that.

How high are the mountains?

Kelly: Well, the highest one is Mount Cook.

It's about 3,800 meters high.

Paul: Hmm. How far is New Zealand from Australia?

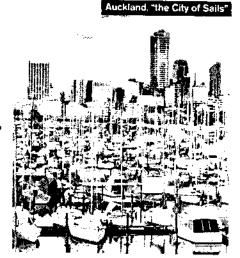
Kelly: Well, I live in Auckland, and Auckland is about 2,000 kilometers from Sydney.

Paul: Well, maybe I should visit you next year, too.

Kelly: That would be great!

B 🕬 Listen to the rest of the conversation.

What are some things New Zealand is famous for?



III GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Questions with how

How far is New Zealand from Australia? How big is Singapore?

How high is Mount Everest? How deep is the Grand Conyon?

How long is the Mississippi River? How hat is New Zealand in the summer?

How cold is it in the winter?

It's about 2,000 kilometers, lt's 620 square kilometers.

It's 8,848 meters high.

It's about 1,900 meters deep. It's about 6.019 kilometers long.

It gets up to about 23° Ceisius.

it goes down to about 10° Celsius.

(1,200 miles)

(239 square miles)

(29.028 feet) (6,250 feet)

(3,740 miles) (74° Fahrenheit)

(50° Fahrenheit)

A Write the questions to these answers. Then practice with a partner.

- B: Angel Falls is 979 meters (3,212 feet) high.
- B: California is about 411,000 square kilometers (159,000 square miles).
- B: The Nile is 6,670 kilometers (4,145 miles) long B: Washington, D.C., gets up to about 32° Celsius (90° Fahrenheit) in the summer
- B Group work Think of five questions with how about places in your country or other countries you know. Ask and answer your questions in groups.

"How cold is Seoul in the winter?"

remember (v). idea (n)

[ri'membe] [ai'dio]

nhớ ý kiến

READING

Doc

Things You Can Do to Help the Environment

Is pollution in your country: ■ serious? ■ under control? ■ increasing? ■ decreasing?

Our environment is in trouble. People and industries are polluting the air, rivers, lakes, and seas. You may think that there's nothing you can do to help. That's not true. In fact, there are many things you can do to help the environment. Here are a few.



Cars

The burning of gasoline is one of the biggest sources of carbon monoxide (CO) in the atmosphere. Some people believe that CO is causing global warming. They think CO thins the ozone layer, which protects us from the sun's rays. So try to walk, bicycle, or use public transportation. And if you drive a car, drive at a steady speed - this is more efficient than speeding up and slowing down.

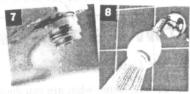


Energy

The biggest use of home energy is for heating and cooling homes. So turn the heat down, especially at night. Replace regular light bulbs with fluorescent or halogen bulbs, which use less energy.



Don't use disposable products. In a single year, people in the United States use enough disposable diapers to reach to the moon and back seven times. If you use disposable products, use products made from recycled materials. Also, recycle whenever possible. Recycling one aluminum can saves enough energy to run a TV for three hours.



Water

Showers use a lot of water. In one week a typical American family uses as much water as a person drinks in three years! Buying a special "low-flow" shower head or taking shorter showers can cut this use in half. Also, fix any leaky faucets.

A Pair work Read the article. Then talk about these questions.

- 1. Which of the advice above is new to you?
- 2. Do you follow any of the advice in the article?
- 3. Which are the three best pieces of advice?
- 4. What are two other things people can do to protect the environment?

B Group work Look at the photos in the article. Which ones show environmental problems? Which show solutions? Describe what is right or wrong in each photo.

spicy (adj) Indian (n)((adj) ['spaisi] ['indion] nhiều gia vị Ấn Đô/người Ấn Độ

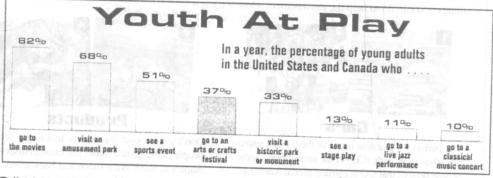


I'm going to see a musical.

Tôi sắp xem một chương trình hài nhạc kịch

1 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Source: National Endowment for the Arts

Which of these activities have you done in the past year? Which of these activities would you like to do? What other activities do you like to do?

2 CONVERSATION Talking about plans

ns

Đàm thoại: Nói về các dư định

A Listen and practice.

Tony: Say, Anna, what are you doing tonight? Would you like to go out?

Anna: Oh, sorry, I can't. I'm going to work late tonight. I have to finish this report.

Tony: Well, how about tomorrow night?
Are you doing anything then?

Anna: No, I'm not. What are you planning to do?

Tony: I'm going to see a musical. Would you like to come?

Anna: Sure, I'd love to! But let me pay for the tickets this time. It's my turn.

Tony: All right! Thanks!

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

- 1. What musical are they going to see?
- 2. What are they doing before the musical?
- 3. Where are they going to meet?
- 4. What time are they meeting?



healthy (adj) delicious (adj) salty (adj)

['helθi] [di'liʃəs] ['sɔ:lti]

mạnh khỏe ngon có muối

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

- Future w	ith present co	ontinuo	is and be goin	g to 🖳	
With present confir What are you daing I'm going to a m	nuaus s tonight?	With be go What is she She's go	With be going to + verb What is she going to do tonight? She's going to work late.		Time expressions tonight tomorrow on Friday
Are you doing anyth No. I'm not.	hing tomorrow night?	Are they go Yes, the	sing to see a musical ton y are.	norrow night?	this weekend next week
A Complete the used as future. C	invitations in colu omplete the respon	mn A with ises in colu	the present continu imn B with be going	ous to.	
A			В		
1. What tomorrow? Wo	,you (do) ould you like to go (out?	a. Well, my father brother at college 1	But my mo	ther and
2you on Saturday n see a movie?	(do) anythi sight? Do you want	ng : to	b. Sorry, I can't. I overtime. How al	bout Saturda	ıy?
a barbecue on	nave) friends over i Sunday, Would yo ents like to come?	for ou	c. Can we go to a la at the office till 7	':00. After th	at I
	OWER Leis		,	Leisure	1
A Complete the	e word map with a nore words to each	ctivities fr		ctivities	
art show barbecue baseball game beach party car show comedy act	craft fair hockey game picnic play rock concert tennis tourname	ent.	ibitions	/ \ [Friendly gatherings
B Pair work of the activities you doing them	Are you going to son the chart? Wh	en are	Spectator sports	- 1 [e performances
,	1. Idile (ilon a peri				

['sæmen]

['sælod]

salmon (n)

salad (n)

cá hối

sa lát

ROLE PLAY An invitation

Chơi phân vai: Lời

Student A: Choose an activity from Exercise 4 and invite a partner to go with you. Be ready to say where and when the activity is.

A: Say, are you doing anything on . . . ? Would you like to . . ?

Student B; Your partner invites you out. Either accept the invitation and ask for more information, or say you can't go and give an excuse.

Accept

Refuse

B: That sounds interesting. Where is it?

B: Oh, I'm sorry, but I can't go. I'm ...

Change roles and try the role play again.

6 CONVERSATION Telephone messages

Listen and practice.

Đàm thoại: Tin nhân

dién thoai

Secretary: Good morning, Parker Industries. Mr. Kale: Hello. May I speak to Ms. Graham, please?

Secretary: I'm sorry. She's not in. Can I

take a message?

Mr. Kale: Yes, please. This is Mr. Kale.

Secretary: Is that G-A-L-E? Mr. Kale: No, it's K-A-L-E.

Secretary: All right.

Mr. Kale: Please tell her our meeting

is on Friday at 2:30.

Secretary: Friday at 2:30.

Mr. Kale: And would you ask her

to call me this afternoon? My number is 356-4031.

Secretary: 356-4031, Yes, Mr. Kale. I'll give Ms. Graham

the message.

Mr. Kale: Thank you.

Good-bye.

Secretary: Good-bye.

What are you going to do?

Find out what your classmates are doing over the weekend. Turn to page

IC-20.

To: Ms Graham Date: August 10 _ Time: ___

WHILE YOU WERE OUT

From: Mr Kale

Phone: <u>356-4031</u> ext:_____ Message: __

The meeting is on Friday at 230

Please call him this afternoon.



soda (n) potato (n) chocolate (n) ['soude] [po'teitou] [ˈឋəkəlit]

sô đa khoai tây số cở la

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Tell and ask

Statement

Messages with a statement

The meeting is on Friday.

Please tell Ann (that) the meeting is on Friday

Would you tell her (that) . . . ? Could you tell her (that) . . . ?

Request

Messages with a request

Call me this afternoon.

Please ask him to call me this afternoon

Would you ask him to . . . ? Could you tell him to . . . ?

Look at the message slips. Ask someone to pass on these messages. Use the words in parentheses. Then compare with a partner

Kim -

The movie is at 7:00 tonight.

bring the tickets for the hockey game tonight.

(could) Could you tell Kim the movie is at 7:00?

(could)

2. MIKE -

Pick me up at home

around 4:00.

5.

Ann -

(would)

The museum opens at 10:00 tomorrow morning.

(would)

Maria -

The concert on Saturday 15 canceled.

6.

Alex -

Meet us in front of the cafeteria at 12:15

(please)

WRITING ■ WRITING

(please)

Viet

Pair work You want to give messages to people in your class. Write a request to your partner. Ask him or her to give the messages for you.

Dear Su Hee.

I'm not going to be in class tomorrow. Would you please ask Ms. King to save any handouts for me? Also, could you tell Steve that I can't meet him for dinner after class? Thanks,

Juan

dessert (n)

tip (n)

waitress (n)

[dr'zo:t]

[tip]

['weitris]

mon trang miéng

riên boa nữ hấu bàn

9 PRONUNCIATION Reduced forms of could you and would you

Phát âm: Dang rút gọn của could you và would you

A Listen and practice. Notice how could you and would you are reduced in conversation.

Could you tell Matt the meeting is at 5:00?

Would you ask him to pick me up at 4:30?

B Practice these questions with reduced forms.

Could you ask her to return my dictionary? Would you tell him there's a picnic tomorrow?

10 LISTENING Take a message

Listen to telephone calls to Mr. Kim and Ms. Carson, and write down the messages.

Date:	Time;
WHILE	YOU WERE OUT
From:	
of: <u>City</u>	
Phone:	ext:
Message:	
Call Mrs	i

Date:	Time:
WHILE YO	WERE OU
From:	
of: <i>Na</i>	tional
	ext:

II ROLE PLAY Who's calling?

Student A: Call your friend David to tell him this:

There's a party at Bob's house on Saturday night. Bob's address is 414 Maple St., Apt. 202.

Pick me up at 8:00 P.M.

Student B: Someone calls for your brother David. He isn't in.
Take a message for him.

Change roles and try another role play.

Student A: Someone calls for your sister Carol. She isn't in.

Take a message for her.

Student B: Call your friend Carol to tell her this:

There's no class next Friday afternoon.

The class is going to a movie at Westwood Theater.

Meet us in front of the theater at 4:30.

park (v)
check (n)
service charge (n)
fast-food (n)

[pa:k] [t/ek] ['s3:vis t/a:d3] ['fa:stTud]

đậu/đỗ séc phí dịch vụ/tiến boa

đổ ăn nhanh

Chơi phán vai: Ai đấy?

Nghe: Ghi tin nhân

useful expressions

May I speak to ...? Can I take a message? I'll give ... the message.



Ways to Keep Phone Calls Short



Do you like to talk on the phone?

Do you think that you spend too much time on the phone?

The phone rings. It's a friend who wants to tell you about his or her latest health problem. You hate to be rude and cut your friend off, but what can you do? Time management consultant Stephanie Winston, author of Stephanie Winston's Best Organizing Tips, offers this advice:

- Don't ask questions like
 "What's new?" They give the
 impression that you have time to
 chat. After "hello," get right to the
 heart of the matter.
- Time your calls intelligently.
 If you make a call right before lunch or dinner, or at the end of the workday, people chat less.
- 3. Set a time limit. Start with, "Hi, I've only got a few minutes, but I wanted to talk to you about" Or, "Gee, I'd love to talk more, but I only have a couple of minutes before I have to run errands."
- 4. Jump on a pause. Even the most talkative caller has to pause now and then. Quickly say, "It has been great talking with you." Then end the conversation.

- 5. Forget niceties. Some people just don't take a hint. Interrupt your caller and say, "I'd like to talk to you longer, but I'm pressed for time.
 Good-bye." Then hang up.
 Don't ask for permission to end the conversation.
- 6. Find a "partner in crime." If nothing else works, ask someone in your home to help you. For example, one woman signals her husband, who yells, "Jane, I think the roast is burning!"
- 7. Avoid the phone completely. Use an answering machine to screen calls. If you have an important message for a chatterbox, leave the message when he or she isn't in.



A Read the article. Then look at these sentences. Check (\checkmark) the things you can say to keep phone calls short.

- 1. I'm glad you feel better. What can I do for you?
 2. I have to go now. Good-bye.
- 2. I nave to go now. Good-bye.
 3. Hi, How are things?
- 4. I need to get off the phone now. There's someone at the door.
- ☐ 5. So, what else is new?
- 6. No, I'm not busy right now.
- 7. I'm sorry to call you at dinnertime, but I have just one question.
- 8. I only have three minutes before I have to leave.

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

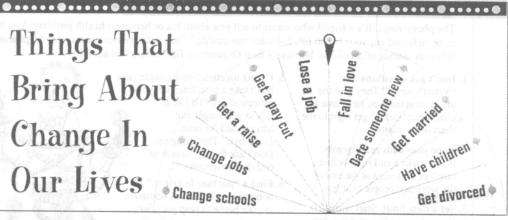
- 1. Which advice have you used sometimes?
- 2. Which do you think are the three best pieces of advice?
- 3. What else can you do to keep phone calls short?

10 A change for the better!

SNAPSHOT

Thay đổi theo hướng tốt hơn

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Have any of these things happened to you in the last few years?

How have they changed you?

What other things bring about change in our lives?

CONVERSATION Catching up

Đàm thoại: Tìm hiểu

A 💷 Listen and practice.

Brian: Diane Grant? I haven't seen you

for ages.

Diane: Brian! How have you been?

Brian: Pretty good. Say, you've really

changed!

Diane: Oh, well, I've lost some weight.

And my hair is longer than before.

Brian: Well, you look great! How are you?

Diane: I'm doing really well. I got married

about three years ago. I have two

kids now.

Brian: That's terrific!

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

How has Brian changed?

canyon (n) hill (n) ocean (n) waterfall (n)

['kænjon] [hil] [ˈoUʃn] ['wo:tofo:l]

hèm núi troris silas snorte quà doi as đại dương thác nước

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS some do sent spaint Start Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Describing changes

With the present tense I have two kids now. I don't smoke anymore.

With the comparative My job is more stressful (now). My hair is longer (than before).

With the past tense I got married. I moved to a new city.

With the present perfect I've lost weight. I've grown a mustache.

A How have you changed in the last five years? Check () the statements that are true for you. If a statement isn't true, give the correct information.

- 1. I've changed my hairstyle.
- 2. I dress differently now.
- 3. I've lost weight.
- 4. I moved into my own apartment.
- 5. I got married.
- I'm more outgoing than before.
- 7. I don't go to many parties anymore.
- 8. My life is easier now.

B Pair work Compare your responses in part A. Have you changed in similar ways?

C Group work Write five sentences describing other changes in your life. Then compare in groups. Who in the group has changed the most?



4 LISTENING Memory lane

Nghe: Dòng ký ức

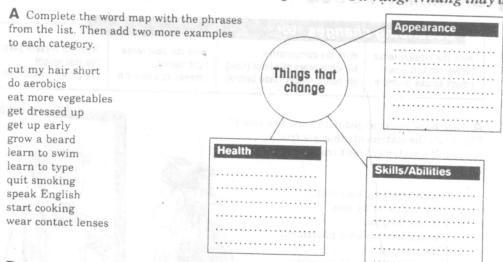
Linda and Scott are looking through a photo album. Listen to their conversation. How have they changed? Write down three changes.

hanges

beach (n) coral reef (n)

[bi:t/] [ˈkɔrəlrif] bãi biển dải/răng san hô ngâm

WORD POWER Things that change Từ vựng: Những thay đối



B Pair work Have you changed in any of these areas? Tell your partner about a change in each category.

"I get up earlier in the morning. I've started cooking. And I get dressed up for work now."

CONVERSATION Planning your future

A Listen and practice.

Alex: So what are you going to do after graduation, Susan?

Susan: Well, I've saved some money, and I think I'd really like to travel.

Alex: Lucky you. That sounds exciting! Susan: Yeah. Then I plan to get a job and my

own apartment.

Alex: Oh, you're not going to live at home?

Susan: No, I don't want to live with my parents - not after I start to work.

Alex: I know what you mean.

Susan: What about you, Alex? Do you have any plans yet?

Alex: I'm going to get a job and live at home. I'm broke, and I want to pay off my student loan!

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

- 1. What kind of job does Alex want?
- 2. Where would Susan like to travel?



Đàm thoại: Dư định cho

tương lai của ban

quiz (n) [kwiz] artist (n) ['a:tist] field (n) [fi:ld]

trò đố vui nghê sĩ cánh đồng

GRAMMAR FOCUS Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Verb + infinitive

What are you going to do after graduation? I'm (not) going to get a job right away. I (don't) plan to get my own apartment I (don't) want to live with my parents. hope to get a new car. I'd like to travel this summer. I'd love to move to a new city.

A Complete these statements so that they are true for you. Use information from the grammar box. Then add three more statements of your own.

- 1. I move to a new city. 2. I.....get married. 3. I have a large family. 4. I.....find a job where I can travel. 5. I make a lot of money! 6. I become very successful. 7. I retire at an early age.
- B Pair work Compare your responses with a partner. How are you the same? How are you different?

B PLAN ON IT

Du dinh

Group work What are your plans for the future? Ask and answer these questions.

What are you going to do after this English course is over?

Do you plan to study here again next year? What other languages would you like to learn? What countries would you like to live in? Why? What countries wouldn't you like to live in? Why? Do you want to get a (new) job in a few years? What kind of job do you hope to get?





Statue of Liberty (n) which was a statue of Liberty (n) Eiffel Tower (n)

[efe:l 'tauo]

tượng Nữ thần Tự do Tháp Eiffel

PRONUNCIATION Reduced form of to Phát âm: Dạng rút gọn

A Listen and practice. Notice that to is reduced to /tə/

của to

I hope to get married. I plan to have a large family.

I'd love to move to a new city. I'd like to live in a small town.

B Pair work Write four statements about yourself using the verbs above. Take turns reading your statements with a partner. Pay attention to the pronunciation of to.

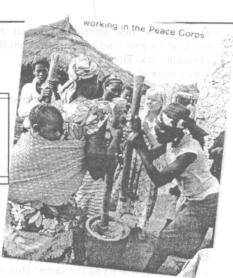
10 WRITING

Viết

A Write about your plans for the future.

I would like to join the Peace Corps for a couple of years. I have a degree in biology, so I hope to work in forestry or environmental education. I'd like to work with people in

B Pair work Compare your composition with a partner's. Ask and answer questions about each other's plans.



Unfold your future! Imagine you could do

III LISTENING Nghe anything, go anywhere, and meet anybody. A Listen to three people discussing their Turn to page plans for the future. What do they plan to do? IC-21. What don't they want to do? Take notes.

		Plans too .	Doesn't want to
1.	Charlie		What countries would you like to hy
	Leon	ew.xears?	
3.	Marie		What lead of job do you hope to get?

B Group work Which person do you think is most like you? Do your classmates agree?

farm (n)	
lots of (pre)

[fa:m] [vo tcl] Thisp Eiffel

nông trang nhiều

12 READING

Đọc

The Future Looks Bright

Do you like to set goals for yourself? What important goals have you reached recently?



Balamurati Krishna Ambati

At age three, Balamurati Krishna Ambati was badly burned and spent several months in the hospital. He decided then that he wanted to be a doctor. A few years later, he read in the Guinness Book of Records that the youngest doctor in the world was 18 years old. So he decided to become a doctor by the age of 17. Many people thought this was impossible, but at 11, Ambati was in college. He graduated from college at 14 and from medical school at 17. Now that he is a doctor, Ambati plans to go for advanced training in Boston.



Catherine Charlton

Catherine Charlton is studying engineering at Cornell University, but she has already achieved an important goal: She has worked for NASA (the National Aeronautics and Space Administration). Charlton's achievements aren't only in engineering, however. She is also a successful pianist and composer. Charlton hopes to combine her talents for engineering and music someday. For example, she would like to design concert halls or manufacture pianos.



Jasmin Sethi

The Scholastic Aptitude Test is the test American students take to enter college; each year, only a few students get a perfect score. One of those students was Jasmin Sethi. Her achievement was especially remarkable because she is blind. To take the test, someone read the test questions to her, and she gave the answers. She even solved difficult math problems in her head. Sethi has been the editor of her school newspaper and has organized food collections. She wants to go to a top university next year. Sethi would like to be a lawyer.

A Read the article. What are each student's interests? What goals has each student set?

hii v		Interests	Goals
	1. Balamurati		
			Budicaga
	3. Jasmin	clasticated and sectionary	neud adu Joung Leann 1934

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Do you think Balamurati is too young to be a doctor?
- 2. What other careers would allow Catherine to combine her interests?
- 3. How do you think someone like Jasmin overcomes his or her disabilities?
- 4. How old were you when you started to think about your career goals?
- 5. Have you achieved a goal you set? What was it?
- 6. What other goals do you have?

environment (n) atmosphere (n) product (n) [in'vaioronmont] ['ætmosfio] ['prodokt] môi trường khí quyển/bầu không khí sản phẩm

Review of Units 13-16

Ôn tập các bài 13-16

Nhà hàng ưa thích nhất

FAVORITE RESTAURANT

A Group work Take turns talking about your favorite place to eat. One student makes a statement about a favorite restaurant. Other students ask questions.

My favorite place to eat is

Where is it? What kind of food do they serve? Does it have a nice atmosphere?

How much does dinner cost? When is it open? How often do you go there? What do you usually order?

B Class activity Which place is the most interesting to you? Tell the class why.



2 LISTENING

Is it expensive?

Listen and check () the best response.

- 1. Yes, this way, please. Yes, please.
- 2. No, I don't.
 - ☐ Yes, I'll have tea, please.
- 3. I'd like a steak, please.
 - Yes, I would.
- 4. I'll have a cup of coffee. ☐ Italian, please.
- Carrots, please.
 - ☐ Yes, I will.
- 6. Yes, I'd like some water.
 - □ No, I don't think so.

INTERESTING ADDRESSES

Các dia chí thú vi

Nghe

A Pair work Ask and answer questions about these places in your city.

Buildings

the biggest hotel the most famous building the oldest building

Streets

the busiest street the best street for restaurants the best street for shopping

Entertainment

the best place to go dancing the best place to listen to music the most interesting tourist spot

A: What's the biggest hotel?

B: I think it's the Hilton.

A: I do, too. / So do I. /

Oh, I don't. I think it's the

B Class activity Compare your answers around the class



4 THE WEEKEND

Pair work Which of the activities listed are you going to do this weekend? What else are you going to do? Talk with a partner.

- A: I'm seeing a concert this weekend.
- B: What concert are you going to see?
- A: A guitar concert at school.
- B: Really? When is it?
- A: It's on Saturday night. I'm going with my brother.

Ngày nghỉ cuối tuần

Some activities

see a concert
meet someone special
go out to eat
work
play a sport or exercise
make a long-distance call

5 ROLE PLAY Inviting a friend

Chơi phân vai: Mời một người ban

A Pair work Take turns inviting your partner to do something.

- A: Hello?
- B: Hi, This is ...
- A: Oh, hi!
- B: Say, are you doing anything (on) . . .?
- A: Oh, yes. I'm sorry. I'm
- B: Well, how about (on) . . . ?
- A: No. What would you like to do?
- B: Let's
- A: I'd love to! What time . . . ?
- B: ...
- A: And where . . . ?
- B: .
- A: OK. See you on Bye!
- B: Bye-bye.

B Pair work Change roles and try the conversation with a different partner.



6 INTERVIEW Phóng ván

A Pair work Find out more about a classmate. Ask your partner these questions or questions of your own.

Where have you lived?

What schools have you gone to?

What did you study?/What do you study now?

Are you married? / Do you hope to get married?

Do you have any children? / Do you want to have children?

What would you like to do in five years? ten years? when you retire?

B Class activity Tell the class about your partner.

youth (n)	[ju:0]	
finish (v)	[ˈfiniʃ]	
craft (n)	[kra:ft]	
classical music (n)	mis ford ['klæsikəl 'm	ju:zik]
	Bogn oon [pei]	

tuổi trẻ/thanh niên kết thúc thủ công nhạc cổ điển trả/thanh toán/nộp

Interchange Activities

interchange 1 GETTING TO KNOW YOU

Tim hiểu ban

A Class activity Go around the class and find this information. Write a classmate's name only once.



Find someone who ... Name 1. . . . has the same first name as a famous person. "What's your first name?" 2. . . . has an unusual nickname. "What do people call you?" 3. . . . has an interesting middle name. "What's your middle name?" 4. . . . has the same last name as a famous person. "What's your last name?" 5. . . . is named after his or her father or mother. "Are you named after your father or mother?" 6. . . . always remembers people's names. "Are you good with names?" 7. ... is from a beautiful city or town. "Where are you from?" 8. ... speaks two foreign languages. "What languages do you speak?"

B Pair work Compare your information with a partner.

fair (n)
barbecue (n)
leisure activity (n)

[fea] ['ba:bikju:]

['le3o æk'tiviti]

hội chợ tiệc ngoài trời hoạt động giải trí

interchange 2 COMMON GROUND

Những điểm chung

A Complete this chart with information about yourself.

	Time
Lusually get up at	
I have breakfast at	
Heave for work or school at	
I have dinner at	
I go to bed during the week at	
I go to bed on weekends at	

B Class activity Take a survey. Ask five classmates for this information.

Names:	 			
What time do you?		Times		
get up	 .,		.,	
have breakfast	 			
leave for work or school	 			
have dinner	 			
go to bed during the week	 		**********	
go to bed on weekends	 			

C Class activity Compare the times you do things with the times your classmates do things. Whose schedule is the most like yours? Tell the class.

"Keiko and I have a similar schedule. We both get up at six and have breakfast at seven A.M."

useful expressions



message (n) meeting (n)

['mesid3] ['mittin] thông điệp/lời nhân cuộc họp

interchange 3 SWAP MEET CANON ON Phiên chợ hàng xôn

Student A

A You want to sell these things. Write an appropriate price for each item.



request (n)

hockey (n) cancel (v)

[ri'kwest] ['hɔki] ['kænsəl]

lời để nghị/yêu cấu môn khúc côn cấu trì hoãn

Student B

A You want to sell these things. Write an appropriate price for each item.



Students A and B

B Pair work Discuss the price of each thing and choose at least three things that you want to buy. Get the best price you can. Be prepared to haggle.*

- A: How much is the . . . ?
- B: It's only \$
- A: Wow! That's expensive!
- B: Well, how about \$...?
- A: No. That's still too much. What about the . . . ?
- B: You can have it for \$
- A: OK. That's reasonable.
- B: And how much is the . . . ?
- A: . . .

dictionary (n)

['dik/ənəri]

de diển

^{*} haggle: Buyers and sellers suggest other amounts until both agree on a lower price.

interchange 4 WHAT AN INVITATION! WHAT AN EXCUSE!

Thật là một lời mời khác thường! Thất là cái có khôi hài!

A Make up three invitations to interesting or unusual activities. Write them on cards.

Godzilla Meets Mightyman is at the Plaza Theater tonight at 8:00. Would you like to see it?

There's a dog and cat show at City Stadium on Saturday. It's at 3:00. Do you want to go?

I want to see the Turtle Races tomorrow. They're at 1:00 at the Civic Hall. Would you like to go?

B Write three response cards. One is an acceptance card.

That sounds great! What time do you want to meet?

The other two cards are refusals. Think of silly or unusual excuses.

I'd like to, but I want to take my bird to a singing contest.

I'm sorry. I'd like to, but I have to wash my hair.



interchange 5 FAMILY FACTS

Các sự kiện về gia dình



A Class activity Go around the class and find this information.

Write a classmate's name only once. Ask follow-up questions of your own.

Find someone	Name
1 who is an only child.	/ ay * 1 .
"Do you have any brothers or sisters?"	
2 who has more than two brothers.	Punk your partner,
"How many brothers do you have?"	TO SO TO YO powers the
3 who has more than two sisters.	Draw bung
"How many sisters do you have?"	STORYMENT VETER TOTAL
4. whose brother or sister is studying abroad.	avodoreto cretificato
"Are any of your brothers or sisters studying abroad? Where?"	
5 who lives with his or her grandparents.	Laborato water are
"Do you live with your grandparents?"	woled hop string at
6 who has a great-grandparent still living.	by social agents to ter
"Is your great-grandmother or great-grandfather still living?"	an minimum man in a
7 who has a family member with an unusual job.	removed on tong ments to the
"Does anyone in your family have an unusual job?"	
8 whose mother or father is working abroad.	Group staps, quoto 8
"Is either of your parents working abroad? Where?"	November of the state of the st

B Group work Compare your information in groups.

interchange 6 FITNESS QUIZ

Trắc nghiệm vui về sức khỏe

A Pair work Interview a partner using this simple quiz. Then add up your partner's score, and find his or her rank below.

our Nutrition Points	S Quiz H
How many meals do you eat during a day? • Five or six small meals • Three meals • One or two meals. Do you eat at regular times during the day	7. How often do you exercise? • Three or more days a week • One or two days a week • Never 8. Which best describes your fitness program?
Inat too early or too late)? Almost always Usually Seldom How many servings of fruits and vegetables	Both weight training and aerobic exercise Weight training or aerobic exercise only None How important is your fitness program to you?
Five or more Two to four One or none	Very important Somewhat important Not very important
How much fatty food do you eat? Very little 6	Your Health 124
About average A lot	Which best describes your weight? Within 6 pounds (3 kg) of my
Do you take vitamins every day? Always Often Often	ideal weight • Within 10 pounds (4.5 kg) of my ideal weight
• Sometimes 2 Do you take more vitamins when you are sick? • Yes 4 • No 2	More than 12 pounds (5.5 kg) over or under 11. How often do you have a complete physical? Once a year
Rank your partner.	Every two or three years Almost never go to the doctor 12. How often da you smoke?
55 to 70 points: Super job! Keep up the good work! 35 to 54 points: Good job! Your health and fitness are above average	Never Hardly ever Often
15 to 34 points: Your health and fitness are below average. Try to learn more about health and fitness.	Total Points
14 points and below: You seem to be out of shape. Now is the time to start making changes. See your doctor or other professionals if you need help.	

B Group work Compare your scores in groups. Who is the fittest? What can you do to improve your fitness?

I	пееа	ю	•		

happen (v)	[ˈhæpən]	ха́у га	
bring (v)	[briη]	mang tới	

interchange 7 VACATION PHOTOS AND MADAY

Anh vê kỳ nghĩ

Student A

A *Pair work* You went on a vacation to Mexico and took these photos. First, think about these questions. Then use the photos to tell your partner about your vacation. Give as much information as you can, and answer your partner's questions.

"I had a really interesting vacation. I went to Mexico"

Where did you go?
How long were you there?
Who did you go with?
What did you do there?
Did you enjoy it?
Where did you take this picture?
Who is this/that?
Is this a . . . ?



B Pair work Listen to your partner talk about his or her vacation. Ask questions like the ones in part A about the vacation.

stressful (adj) photo album (n) ['stresfl] ['foutou 'ælbəm]

đầy căng thẳng (10 manh 2004) album ảnh

interchange 7 VACATION PHOTOS Anh vê kỳ nghĩ

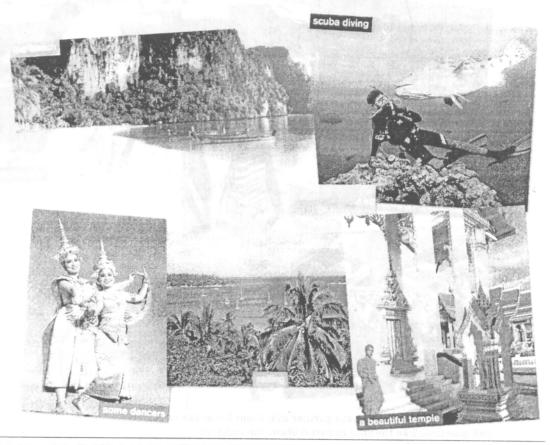
Student B

A Pair work Listen to your partner talk about a recent vacation. Ask questions about the vacation and the photos.

Where did you go? How long were you there? Who did you go with? What did you do there? Did you enjoy it? Where did you take this picture? Who is this/that? Is this a . . ?

B Pair work Look at these photos of your vacation in Thailand. First, think about the questions in part A. Then use the photos to tell your partner about your vacation. Give as much information as you can, and answer your partner's questions.

"I had a really interesting vacation recently, too. I went to Thailand . . .



appearance (n) skill (n) ability (n)

[o'piorons] [skil] [o'biliti]

hình dáng/vẻ bể ngoài kỹ năng khả năng

interchange 8 NEIGHBORHOOD SURVEY

Thăm dò về khu láng giềng

A Group work Imagine you are looking for a new home. You need to decide where you want to live. Compare two different neighborhoods in your city or town. Talk with your group and complete the survey.

What kinds of people live in each neighborhood - families, young people, working people, retired people? Compare the neighborhoods' recreation facilities, stores, schools, and public transportation. How much noise is there? pollution? What's one advantage of living in each neighborhood? What's one disadvantage?

	Neighborhood 1:	Neighborhood 2:
_		
people		_
recreation facilities		
stores		
schools		
public transportation		
noise		
pollutian		
an advantage of living in the neighborhood		
a disadvantage of living in the neighborhood		

- A: What neighborhoods do you want to compare?
- B: Let's look at Parkside and downtown.
- C: OK. So what kinds of people live in Parkside?
- D: There are lots of retired people. There aren't very many young people with families.
- A: That's true. What about downtown?
- C: ...

B Class activity Study the results of the survey. Which neighborhood would you prefer to live in? Tell the class where and why.

graduation (n)

[,græd3u'eiføn]

sư tốt nghiệp

interchange 9 FIND THE DIFFERENCES Tim các điểm khác biệt

Student A

A Pair work How many differences can you find between your picture here and your partner's picture? Ask questions like these to find the differences. (Look only at the people with names.)

How many people are there in your picture? slaved bealter colored and

How many are standing? Who?

How many are sitting? Who?

What color is Dave's T-shirt? Kate's sweater?

Who is holding a drink?

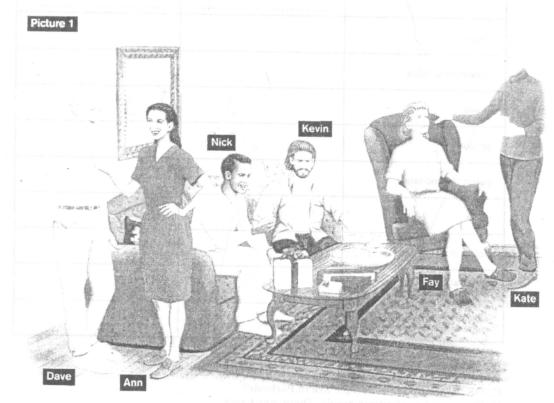
What does . . . look like?

Does . . . wear glasses?

Does . . . have a beard?

What color is . . .'s hair?

How long is . . .'s hair?



B Class activity How many differences are there in the pictures? What are they?

"In picture 1, Dave's T-shirt is In picture 2, it's"

join (v) degree (n) [d3oin] [di'gri:] tham gia bằng cấp

interchange 10 LIFESTYLES SURVEY Thăm dò về lối sống

A Pair work What kind of lifestyle does your partner have: easygoing and relaxed or busy and fast-paced? Interview your partner using this survey.



Easygoing and relaxed?



Busy and fast-paced?

How many times have you	Number of times	How many times have you	Number of times
watched TV in the past week? slept late in the past two weeks?		6. eaten a takeout meal in the past week?7. gotten home late in the	
3. read a book in the last month?4. been to a movie in the last		evening in the last two weeks? 8. played sports or exercised in the last month?	
two months? 5. written a letter to a friend in the last six months?		worked late or studied past midnight in the last month?	
		10. been to a party in the last six months?	

B Group work Tell the group what you think your partner's lifestyle is like and why.

"Juan's lifestyle is busy and fast-paced. He hardly ever has time to watch TV, read a book, or go to the movies. He works late a lot, and he often eats takeout meals. . . . "

become (n) impossible (adj) blind (adj)

[bi'k\lambdam] [im'posobl] [blaind]

trở nên/trở thành không thể bi mù

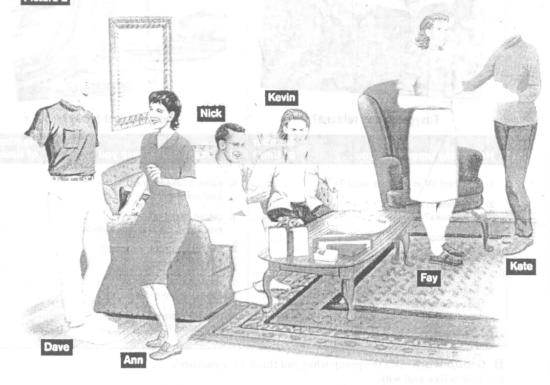
interchange 9 FIND THE DIFFERENCES Tim các điểm khác biệt

Student B

A Pair work How many differences can you find between your picture here and your partner's picture? Ask questions like these to find the differences. (Look only at the people with names.)

How many people are there in your picture? How many are standing? Who? How many are sitting? Who? What color is Dave's T-shirt? Kate's sweater? Who is holding a drink? What does ... look like? Does . . . wear glasses? Does . . . have a beard? What color is . . .'s hair? How long is . . .'s hair?

Picture 2



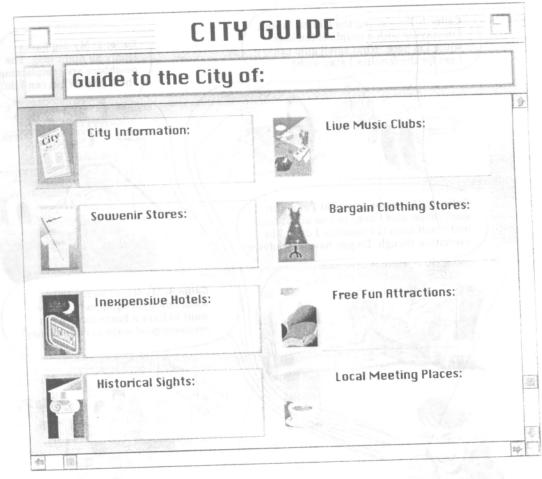
B Class activity How many differences are there in the pictures? What are they?

[&]quot;In picture 1, Dave's T-shirt is ... In picture 2, it's"

interchange 11 CITY GUIDE

Hướng dẫn về thành phố

A Where can you get information about your city? buy souvenirs? see historical sights? Complete the "City Guide" with information about your city.



B Group work Compare your "City Guides" in groups. Ask these questions and your own questions. Add any additional or interesting information to your guide.

Where can you get information about your city? Where can you buy souvenirs? Are there any inexpensive hotels? What historical sights should you see? What's a good place to hear local music? What's a cheap place to shop for clothes? What fun things can you do for free? Where do people often meet?

steak (n) cost (n) [steik]

bít-tết giá cả/chi phí

interchange 12 TALK RADIO

Chương trình nói chuyện truyền thanh

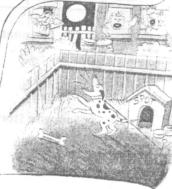
A *Group work* Look at the four questions that people called a radio program about. What advice would you give each caller? Discuss suggestions to give each caller, and then choose the best one.

Caller 1: I'm visiting the United States. I'm staying with a couple of families while I'm here. What small gifts can I get for the families I stay with?

Caller 2: My dog barks loudly all night long. The neighbors are complaining about him. What can I do?/



Caller 3: My doctor says that I'm not in good shape, and I need to lose about four and a half kilos (10 pounds). I don't like exercising though. Do you have any advice?



Caller 4: My school wants to buy some new gym equipment, so we want to have a fundraiser. What are some good ways to raise money?





B Class activity Share your group's advice for each problem with the class.



useful expressions

I think it would be useful to
One thing you could do is
It's a good idea to
It's important to
You should

distance (n) guitar (n)

['distons]

khoảng cách đàn ghi ta

interchange 13 ARE YOU READY TO ORDER?

Student A

Ông đã quyết định gọi món gì chưa?

You are the waiter or waitress at The Corner Cafe. Take your customers' orders.



Taking the order

- · Greet your customers.
- Ask what they would like.
 Write down each person's order on a separate piece of paper. (Use the menu to write down the orders and amounts.)
- "You ordered" and "You wanted"
- Ask if your customers want anything else (such as something to drink, a salad, or dessert).
- · Go and get their orders.



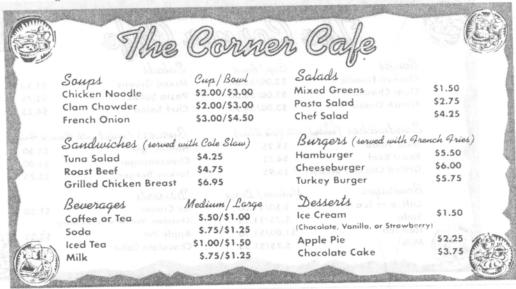
Delivering the order

- Bring the orders to your customers. (You make a mistake. You give one customer the wrong thing.)
- Go and get the right order and bring it back.



Bringing the check

- Give each customer his or her check with a total at the bottom. (You make a mistake. You did not correctly add up one of the checks.)
- Walk away and wait for the customers to put the checks and money on the table.
- Pick up the checks and money. Bring back each customer's change.



interchange 13 ARE YOU READY TO ORDER?

Students B and C

Ông đã quyết định gọi món gì chưa?

You are hungry customers in The Corner Cafe. You are having lunch. The waiter or waitress comes to take your order.





- Look at the menu below.
 Order something to eat and drink.
- Ask the waiter or waitress to bring you something extra (such as a glass of water or another fork).



Being served

The waiter or waitress brings your order. Is it correct? If not, tell him or her like this: "Sorry, I didn't order I ordered"



Paying the check

- The waiter or waitress brings a check for each of you. Are they correct? If not, tell him or her like this: "Excuse me. This isn't right. It should be"
- Put the checks and money on the table for the waiter or waitress to pick up.

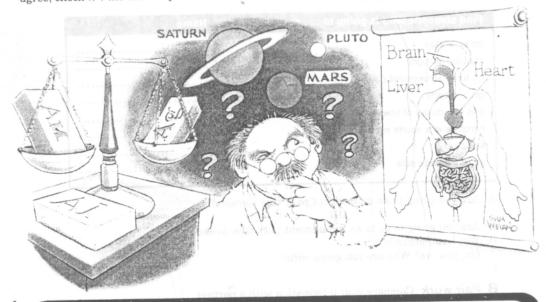
Tipping

- The waiter or waitress brings your change.
- Decide how much to leave for a tip.

	The Corne	er Cafe	
Soups Chicken Noodle Clam Chowder French Onion	Cup/Bowl \$2.00/\$3.00	Salads Mixed Greens Posta Salad Chef Salad	\$1.50 \$2.75 \$4.25
Roast Beef Grilled Chicken	(served with Cole Slaw) \$4.25 \$4.75 Breast \$6.95	Burgers (served will Hamburger Cheeseburger Turkey Burger	th Arench Aries) \$5.50 \$6.00 \$5.75
Beverages Coffee or Tea Soda Iced Tea Milk	Medium / Large 5.50/\$1.00 \$.75/\$1.25 \$1.00/\$1.50 \$.75/\$1.25	Desserts Ice Cream (Chocolote, Vanilla, or Strav Apple Pie Chocolate Cake	\$1.50 wberry) \$2.25 \$3.75

interchange 14 HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW? Ban biết đến đâu?

Pair work Take turns asking and answering these questions. Check (✓) the correct answer. If you and your partner don't agree, check () the answer you think is correct.



World Knowledge Quiz

□ aluminum ☐ silver 1. Which metal is the heaviest? gold gold Pluto ■ Saturn ■ Neptune 2. Which planet is the coldest? □ Mars T the Earth Jupiter 3. Which one is the biggest? a tortoise an elephant a whale 4. Which animal lives the longest? n a camel an elephant a giraffe 5. Which one is the tallest? the heart the liver ☐ the brain 6. Which of these is the heaviest? □ 1 liter of beer □ 1 liter of soda* □ I liter of wine 7. Which drink has the most calories? Chile ☐ Peru 8. Which country is the driest? ☐ Egypt □ India Colombia □ Malaysia 9. Which one is closest to the equator? a hexagon an octagon a pentagon 10. Which shape has the most sides? □ a mile a kilometer 11. Which measurement is the longest? a vard the Middle Ages ☐ the Renaissance ☐ the Dark Ages 12. Which era is the oldest? *1 liter = 35 ounces Correct answers

How many did you get correct? (See the appendix at the back of the book for the answers.)

binoculars(m) tennis radlett((n)

12 Perfect! Brilliant! You should be a teacher.

Very good! Do you watch lots of TV game shows?

[bi'nokjuloz] ['tenis,rækit] ống nhòm vot chơi ten nít

5-8 Just OK. How often do you go to the library?

0-4 You should never be on a quiz show.

interchange 15 WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO? Ban dinh làm gì?

A Class activity What are your classmates' plans for the weekend?

Go around the class and find people who are going to do these things.

Ask for further information.

Find someone who is going to next weekend.	Name
go on a date	
stay out all night	
go to an amusement park	
go to a party	
isit friends out of town	
ompete in a sports event	
ee a play	
o to a garage sale	

A: Are you going to an amusement park this weekend?

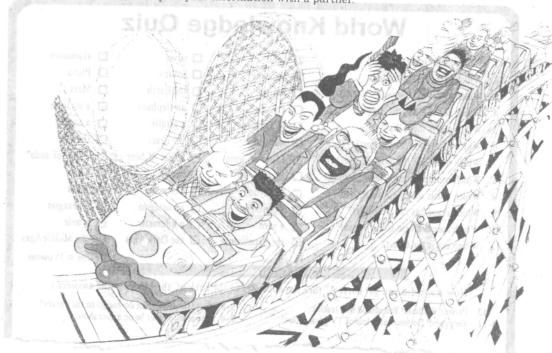
A: Are you going to go to an amusement park this weekend?

B: Yes, I am, actually.

A: Oh, you are? Who are you going with?

B:

B Pair work Compare your information with a partner.



interchange 16 UNFOLD YOUR FUTURE! Tiết lộ tương lai của bạn



A Complete this chart with information about yourself.

and the size of th	
My Possi	ble Future
What are two things you plan to do next year?	er trad
	insert ellected low that have the
What are two things you aren't going to do next year?	
What is something you would like to change?	ежевзиона
artermas 200	Uresting someone Introdu
What is something you hope to buy in the next year?	THE THE THE TENT
What is a place you want to visit someday?	Cook t
What is a place you would like to move to?	information Asking Wholsh
Who would you like to take a vacation with? What famous person would you like to meet?	Where are your from: 2 Wing are
vynat lamous person would you like to meet.	mont at I Supartização Zivo H

B Group work Compare your information in groups. Be prepared to explain the future you have planned.

- A: What are two things you plan to do next year?
- B: Well, I'm going to travel to Italy and meet someone new.
- C: Oh, really? Who are you going to meet? notines WOISWETXE RAMMARS
- B: I don't know, yet! What about you? What are two things you plan to do next year?

	١		
•	,		

contest (n) though south 0 [ken'test] [b cub's] cuộc thi wash one's hair buth and ghod [wɔf wΛn/heə] [luf, u/nʌ] gội đầu

Unit Summaries

Unit Summaries contain lists of key vocabulary and functional expressions, as well as grammar extensions for each unit. For Grammar Focus models, please refer to the appropriate unit page.

1

PLEASE CALL ME CHUCK.

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

back bow cheek

class Dad

engineering female

friend greeting

handshake hug

nug kiss male Mom

(first/last/full) name

nickname parents

pat student

(baseball/volleyball) team

women

Titles

 $\begin{array}{c} {\rm Miss} \\ {\rm Mr.} \end{array}$

Mrs. Ms.

Adjectives

married same single

Articles

a the

Verbs

am are Adverbs

here
(aver) there

tuo

Prepositions

from (Paris/France) in (English 102/Canada) on (the volleyball team,

the back

Conjunctions

and but

Interjections

oh well

EXPRESSIONS

Greeting someone

Hello Hi

Exchanging personal information

What's your name?

I'm //My name is //
Where are you from?

How are you?
Not bad.

Pretty good, thanks.

Introducing someone

This is . . . /These are . . . Nice to/Pleased.to/ Good to meet you.

Asking about someone

Who's that?
That's
Who are they?

Their names are at

Checking information

How do you pronounce It's Mandel, with the accent on "del."

How do you spell. "What do people call you?" Please call me

You can call me
Everyone calls me
Excuse me, what's again'

It's . . . Are you studying . . ? Are you on vacation? Yes, I am No. I'm not

Agreeing That's right OK

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Sentences with be

My name is Amy. be + noun

I am from Korea.

be + prepositional phrase

I am Korean. be + adjective

abroad unusual (adj) [əˈbrɔːd] [Anˈjuː3ul]

ở nước ngoài không bình thường/khác la

HOW DO YOU SPEND YOUR DAY?

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

Jobs/Professions announcer architect carpenter chef company director disc jockey doctor engineer flight attendant

(tour) guide nurse police officer professor receptionist sales manager salesman

salesperson secretary security guard supervisor teacher

travel agent word processor Workplaces airline (construction) electronics) соправу

department store hospital office. radio station (fast-food) restaurant

school Classes

business computer science mathematics

Time day holiday hour week year

Other clothes country (computer) equipment

high school house spistruction

tunch music mewsipaper passenger patient people phone snack tour

weather report work

Adjectives average full-time great interesting httle

part-time Article 2011

long

Verbs

answer armye (at) build care for conk du get (home)

get up go (to bed/to school/to work) have (a job/lunch) leave like

love play (music) read set1

serve

sleep sound (interesting) spend (your day)

start stay up study take teach wake up watch work

Adverbs a lot early

exactly home late only pretty (late) then

Prepositions about/aroung :10:00/noon after (midnight) at Inight/7:00s noon/midnight before (noon) for ean hour in othe morning the afternoon the eveninghke (Peru) an oweekends weekdays. weeknights Sundays

until modnight. Interjection

EXPRESSIONS

Describing work/school

What do you do? I'm azan Where do you work? I work at/in/for . . . Where do you go to school?

I go to ...

Asking for more information

What about . . . ? Which ...?

Asking for and giving opinions

How do you like Hike . . a lotal love . . . It's a great

Expressing interest Really?

Oh, really? That sounds interesting Talking about daily schedules

How do you spend your day? Well 1 Then 1 What time do you go to work school?

Heave at And when do you get home? I get home around

Apologizing Gee, I'm sorry

GRAMMAR EXTENSION

1. Prepositions in sentences about work/school

1 work for Toyota for Ms. Jones. for a lawyer

for + name of company for + name of person for + person's job

I work in a bank. at a restaurant.

mat + workplace

I work in the sales department, in + department/section in the front office.

l go to Columbia University.

to + name of school

nutrition (n) fitness (n) partner (n)

Inju: tri/n ('fitms) ['pa:tne]

2. Articles Indefinite articles

I'm a student He's an engineer

a before consonants an before vowel sounds

Definite article

the + specific place I work for the Daily News in the sales department

> ché độ định đường sư vừa văn đối tác

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Clothes and jewelry backpack bag baots bracelet cap earrings gloves jacket (pair of) jeans necklace pants ring Rollerblades scarf

shirt

tie

athletic/shoes

sunglasses

sweater

watch

Materials* cotton gold leather plastic polyester rubber silksilver loow *Names of

materials can be used as nouns or adjectives

Other adult color compact disc cost croom: decor design dollar entertainment (for) example expenses (gallon of) gas haircut

health money (birthday) present price salary savings style

price) tag taxes thing

transportation

Adjectives attractive bad pre

cheap dark different each expensive

good

large light medium Dice OKperfect pretty reasonable

small warm yearly

Verbs buy

get have on let (me) - verb look va seem : look at pay (for)

prefer spend (money try on

Adverbs almost better more right there

Preposition for (you)

Conjunction

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about prices

How much is this sweater? It's . That isn't bad How much are those shoes? They re ...

That's expensive.

Comparing

The black boots are more attractive/prettier than the brown ones.

ldentifying things

Which one? The wool one Which ones? The blue ones

Talking about preferences

Which one do you like better/more? I like the ... one better/more. Which ones do you prefer? I prefer the ... ones.

Getting someone's attention Excuse me.

Hey. Look! Making and declining an offer Would you like to

Oh, no. That's OK.

Thanking someone

Thank you (anyway) You're welcome.

Asking for more information Why?

Do you mean ...? Oh, these?

Expressing doubt Hmni. I'm not sure.

Expressing surprise Are you kidding?

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Comparative of adjectives

Adjectives with ser Add er:

Add a -Drop y and add her:

Double the final consonant and add -er:

cheap → cheaper

nice - nicer pretty --- prettier big → bigger

Adjectives with more

more + adjective. more perfect more expensive

For more information on comparatives, see the appendix at the back of the book.

take the picture

[teik on pikula]

chup ảnh

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Music* classical country gospel jazz New Age pop rap/urban

rock

salsa

*Names of musical styles can be used as nouns or adjectives.

Movies comedy horror film science fiction thriller western

TV programs game show news soap opera talk show

Entertainers actor actress group singer

Other CD date dinner fan

(baseball) game gym kind (of) piano play theater ticket

trumpet video

Adjectives hest favorite

new

Verbs agree ask come over go out have to know listen to

meet

want

need play (an instrument) save sing think of visit

Adverbs just really tonight

Prepositions for dinner on (TV) with time?

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about likes and dislikes

Do you like . . Yes, I do. I like alot. No. I don't. I can't stand No. I don't like . . . very much. What kind of . . . do you like? What do you think of ...? What's/Who's your favorite . . . ? Giving opinions

Llike . . . Do you? Lean't stand . How about you? Lthink We don't agree on

Inviting and accepting/ refusing invitations

Would you like to ... ? Yes, I would I'd love to. Do you want to . . . " That sounds great. I'd like to, but I have to . . . Making suggestions

Why don't you Let's . That sounds fine.

Asking about events When is it?

Where is it? What time does it start? Where should we ...

Asking for more information How about . . . "

GRAMMAR EXTENSION

1. Plural nouns

singer → singers Add -s. actress -> actresses Add -cs: Drop y and add -tes: comedy → comedies 2. Prepositions

Do you want to go out on Saturday? on + day m + place Let's meet at the theater ur + time at 7:30.

recently (adv) picture (n)

[ˈriˈsntli] ['pikt/o]

gắn đây bức ảnh/tranh

TELL ME ABOUT YOUR FAMILY.

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Family/Relatives anent. brother children cousin daughter father grandfather grandmother grandparents husband mother nephew Busine sister sister-in-law son uncle

wife

Other
acting
age
college
exhibition
fact
family tree
headline
home
(foreign) language
lawyer
painter
percent
semesfer
theater company

Pronoun anyone

winter

Adjectives divorced elderly famous together young Verbs break up end get (married/divorced) live look for move

say stay take (a class) take care of talk teli travel visit

remarks

return

Adverbs
Time expressions
again
ever
most of the time
never
(right) now
often
still

these days usually this month/semester winter/year

Other abroad alone

Prepositions at (a university home) by the age of

EXPRESSIONS

Asking about someone
Tell me about
What is ___doing these days?

Exchanging information about the present

Are you still looking for a job?
Yes, I am./No. I'm not.
What are you studying this year?
I'm studying a foreign language.
Is anyone in your family ... right now?
Yes, my ... is.

Expressing interest is that right?

What an interesting Wow

Disagreeing

Do you think so? I think I don't agree I don't think so. It's different in my country. Not really

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Present participles

Add -ing.

Drop e and add -ing:

Double the final consonant and add -ing:

Shop --> shopping

advantage (n) disadvantage (n)

[ed'vaintid3] [,disød'vaintid3] ưu điểm/thuận lợi khuyết điểm

HOW OFTEN DO YOU EXERCISE?

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

Sports and fitness activities

aerobics basketball bicycling football

jogging racquethall Rollerbiading soccer

swimming tennis

weight training

voga .

Other classmate couch potato fitness freak

free time (fitness) program sports fanatic

teentager)

Pronoun , nothing

Adjectives

good (at sports/for you) fit in (great) shape

middle-aged old popular regular

Verbs

stary

exercise guess keep learn lift (weights) play (a sport)

take (a walk) work out Adverb

hard just (= only) sometime

Prepositions

in (my free time for (a walk) like (that)

Interjection

say

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about routines

How often do you ?
Three times a v.eek/day/month

I don't . very often.

Do you ever . . . 9 .How much time do you spend . . . ?

Around two hours a day.

Talking about abilities

How well do you 2. Pretty well.

Not very well. How good are you at

Tin pretty good, I guess. Not too good. Asking for more information What else

what eise

Expressing surprise You're kidding'

Agreeing

All right No problem.

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Placement of adverbs of frequency

Questions

Is he usually at the gym after work?

be + subject + adverb

Statements

He is usually at the gym after work.

subject = be + adverb

He isn't usually there on weekends

subject - negative be + adverb

Questions

Does he usually go to the gym after work?

does + subject + adverb + verb

Statements

He usually goes to the gym after work.

subject + adverb + verb

He usually doesn't go on weekends

suigect + adverb + doesn t + verb

Always usually goes between don't doesn't and the main verb.

He doesn't always go to the gym on weekends subject + doesn t + adverb + verb

sweater (n) beard (n) ['sweto] [biod] áo len dài tay

ràu

WE HAD A GREAT TIME!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

car city concert

(the) country dancing

dishes drive housework

lake neighbor noise party

pienie trip weather

Pronouns anything

everyone

someone

Adjectives

all boring broke coal

difficult foggy special terrific

Verbs baby-sit complain

drive enjoy

go shopping have (someone) over

have (a|n|... time/ la lot of! fun!

invite (someone) out

see snow

take (a day off)

work on

Adverbs

Time expressions all day/month/year

all the time as usual

last night/summer/weekend

the whole time yesterday

Other also around

away unfortunately

Prepositions

in (the country) on (a trip/business/vacation)

over (the weekend:

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about past activities Did you go out on Saturday?

What did you do ...? How did you spend . . . ? Where did you go 🧢 🥕

What time did you go ...? How long were you . . ?

Giving opinions about past experiences How did you like .

How was

lt was . 4 really enjoyed it

What was the best thing about . . .? It's difficult to say.

Was the . OK2 Making and responding to suggestions

Why don't you gust/ But then what would I do

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Sentences about the weather

How was the weather?

il + be

It was cool/cold/freezing.

warm/hot. sunnv/clear cloudy/ramy windy/foggy

if + verb

It rained/snowed

easygoing (adj) relaxed (adj)

busy (adj) fast-paced (adj) ['i:zi,gouin] [ri'lækst]

[ˈbizi] [fa:st peis] thoái mái thư giản

bân rôn tất bật

HOW DO YOU LIKE THE NEIGHBORHOOD?

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

Neighborhood! Community places apartment (building)

aquarium

bank barber shop bookstore cafe cuffee shop

dance club drugstore gas station grocery store

hotel laundromat library

(science) museum park

pay phone post office

shopping center

stationery store

street travel agency

Other air bedroom book card crime dining room idea

kitchen living room ocean

paper (= stationery) pollution public transportation

suburbs traffic anemployment

water

Adjectives

busy clean close convenient : important

low пеаг quiet sale

Verbs borrow

dry happen make (a reservation) move in

trade (places) wash

Adverbs

downtown nearby

Prepositions

in (the shopping center) your neighborhood: on Pine Street Third

Avenue:

Interjections

by the way in fact of course

EXPRESSIONS

Asking for and giving locations

is there a/an ... around here? Yes, there is. There's one No, there isn't, but there's one. Sorry, I don't know.

Are there any ... near here?
Yes, there are There are some ... No, there aren't, but there are some . . I'm not sure, but I think

Complaining That's the trouble Asking about quantities

How much ... is there? There's a lot/a little/none. There isn't much/any How many ... are there? There are a lova few/none There aren't many/any

Giving opinions

I bet . .

GRAMMAR EXTENSION

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable Singular

Plural

a bookstore an apartment (some) bookstores (some) apartments

2. Some and any Questions

Is there a bookstore? Are there any bookstores?

Statements There are some bookstores.

Negatives There aren't any bookstores. Uncountable

Singular

Plural

(some) traffic (some) noise

Questions

traffic? Is there any traffic?

Statements

There is some traffic

Negatives

There isn't any traffic

stand (v) sit (v)

[stænd] sit

dúng ngôi

WHAT DOES HE LOOK LIKE?

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

beard centimeter (cm)

contact lenses couch couple eye fushion foot/feet glasses guy

hair hand height length man

mustache person T-shirt window woman

Adjectives

bald blond curly good looking handsome

serious-looking short straight tall

Verbs ask for change

khaki

missset stand wear

Adverbs

ago fairly pretty quite

Prepositions

in (a T-shirt and jeans his thirties on the couch.

to the left tofowith (red hair)

EXPRESSIONS

Greeting someone

Good afternoon. Good to see you

Offering help

Can I help you?

Yes, I'm looking for

Asking about someone's appearance

What does she look like? How old is she?

What color is her hair/are her eyes?

How tall is she?

Identifying people

Which one is Judy?

She's the one talking to Tom. Who's Brian?

He's the man with curly blond hair in jeans. behind the couch

Expressing intention

I'll go and

Expressing regret

I'm afraid

Hesitating

Let's sec.

Confirming information

Are you . . .

Yes, that's right

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Be and have to describe someone

be + adjective l'm 18

have + noun I have brown hair

He's baid. She's tall.

He has a mustache and a beard She has blue eyes.

They're medium height.

They have curly black hair.

guide (n) ' argain (v) [gaid] [ba:gin]

sự hướng dẫn mặc cá

HAVE YOU EVER RIDDEN A CAMEL?

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns accident appointment audience bird breakfast bungee'jumping camel camera

(budy-building) competition (a) couple (of) fire

fish grocery shopping full kowi (fruit) laundry magic magican gott's (milk

mutorcycle

mountain

pastime pleasure riverboat skiing sports car truck wallet way wedding (a) while

white-water rafting trice) wine

Pronouns several something Adjectives every exciting incredible raw several unusual valuable wonderfu)

Verbs
call
clean
climb
decide
drink
eat
bike
jog
base
make remu

tex

make (your bed) ride Adverbs actually already lately once recently today twice yel

Prepositions for (a while) in (a long time)

Conjunction because

EXPRESSIONS

Exchanging information about past experiences

Have you ever 2 Yes, I have./No. I haven't.

Giving a suggestion You should

Agreeing Sure. Checking and sharing information

The magician?
That's right
Thear

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Time expressions

With present perfect

Time expressions refer to indefinite times in the past.

I've already seen that show

I've seen it **twice**. I haven't seen it **vet**

I haven't been to the movies in a long time.

With past tense

Time expressions refer to specific times in the past.

I saw it **last night**. I saw it **yesterday**

I saw it last Friday

I went to the movies about a month ago.

equipment (n)

[i'kwipmont]

thiết bị

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Sensons fall spring summer

winter

visitor

Other arrival beach departure harbor hometown (flea) market million mightlife tourist Pronoun
you = anyone;

Adjectives beautiful cold crowded dangerous dirty friendly hot humid modern relaxing stressful ugly Verbs Modals can should

Other hate

Adverb anytime

Prepositions at (the heach) in (the fall) on (the street)

Conjunctions however though

EXPRESSIONS

Describing something

What's ... like?

It's ... but it's not too
It's ..., and it's

Asking for a favor Can you . . . ! Yes, I can./Sure I can.

No, I can't.

Asking for and giving suggestions What should I . . . ?

You should You shouldn't Should I ...? Yes, you should...

No. you shouldn't

Talking about advisability

What can you do? You can . . . You can't

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Sentences with and, but, however, though

These sentences mean the same: They contrast something good (a beautiful city) and something bad (very hot).

This is a beautiful city, but it's very hot in the summer.

It's very hot in the summer, however It's very hot in the summer, though.

In this sentence, the conjunction and adds information.

This is a beautiful city, and there's always a lot to do.

waiter (n) menu (n) ['weito] ['menju:]

nam bối bàn thực đơn

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Health problems backache burn cold cough dry skin fever Нu headache

niccups insect bite insomnia muscle pain sore throat

stomachache stress sunburn toothache

Containers and medicines antacid aspirin bandage bottle box can cold tablets cough drops

(anti-itch/skin) cream (eve) drops heating pad lotion ointment package sleeping pills

spráy tissue tube

vitamin (C)

Other chicken stock dentist garhe liquid meat

medicine cabinet реррег pharmacist remedy rest slice

Adjectives excellent folk half helpful lots of SOFF tired usciul

Verbs Modals could may

Other chop up cut · get ut coldput rest

take (medicine) something for tie

suggest work := succeed:

Prepositions in (bed) under (cold water)

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about health problems

How are you? Not so good. I have That's too bad.

Offering and accepting assistance

Can/May I help you?

Yes, please. Could/Can/May I have .

Here you are. Thanks a lot. Asking for and giving advice

What should you do it's helpful/a good idea to

Asking for and giving suggestions

What do you have/suggest for Try. I suggest You should get

Expressing dislike

Ugh!

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Sentences with have got to talk about health problems

What's the matter?

I've got a bad cold. She's got the fluContractions.

l have = I've She has = She's

correct (adj) fork (n)

[køˈrekt] [fb:k]

đúng cái nia

MAY I TAKE YOUR ORDER, PLEASE?

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns
Food and beverages
bread
broth
(chocolate, cake
(clam) chowder
(cup of) coffee
cole slaw
cucumber
dessert
dressing
flavor
(french) fries
(mixed) greens
bamburger

ice cream

main dish

meathalls

Jemon.

meal

milk

pasta

rapple) pre potato rice salad salmon seafood spaghetti seda (onion) soup steak (iced) tea tomato turkey vegetable vinagrette

Other customer order tip waiter waitress Pronoun

Adjectives baked bland delterous ethnic fined greasy gralled healthy mashed nich roast salty

spicy

Verbs Modals will would

Other bring go back order

Adverbs a bit (not) at all for now right away

Preposition with lemons

EXPRESSIONS

Expressing feelings I'm crazy about . I'm (not) in the mood for

Agreeing and disagreeing
I like
So do 1/1 do. too
I don't like . .
Neither do 1/1 don't either.
I'm crazy about . So am 1/1 am, too
I'm not in the mood for . Neither am 1/I'm not either.

Neither can I.'I can't either.

So can L/I can, too

Lean't

Ordering in a restaurant
May I take your order, please?
What would you like?
I'd like/I'll have a an/the
What kind of would you like?
I'd like/I'll have please
Would you like an/thing else?
Yes, please. I'd like
No, thank you. That will be all.

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Polite requests

Imperature Please bring me a glass of water.

Questions with cancould will would Can you please bring me a glass of water? Could Will Would

metal (n) measurement (n)

['metol] ['mo3zment] kim loại phép đo lường

THE BIGGEST AND THE BEST!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Geography canyon cliff continent

desert "down under" (≠ Australia

and New Zealand:
farm
field
forest
plain
plateau
coral reef
riser
sea
swamp

valley volcano waterfall Measurements

degree

Fahrenheit/Celsius

kilometer meter

(square) mile temperature

Other artist attraction batter feather timen Adjectives

deep lar heavy high located lucky mountainous

Verbs get up (to) go down (to)

Prepositions

in the mountains/the world-

of the three; on (Bah

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about distance and measurements

How long is the '''.
It's kilometer's long.
How bot is in the summer'.
It gets up to degrees.
How cold is in the winter'.
It goes down to degrees.

Making comparisons

Which country is larger or is larger than.

Which country is the largest is the largest of the three

What is the most beautiful . . in the world?

I think is the most beautiful

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Superlative of adjectives

Adjectices with sest

See the appendix at the back of the book for a list of adjectives

Adjectives with most

most + adjective most lamous most mountainous

amusement (n) date (n) compete (v) (oʻmju:zmont) {deit] [kompi:t} trò vui chơi cuọc hẹn canh tranh plan

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns
(comedy) act
(leisure) activity
address

amusement park barbecue cafeteria (telephone) call dictionary

(craft) fair (arts/crafts) festival gathering handout hockey meeting message monument musical

spectator (tennis) tournament Adjectives canceled historic live

finish give open pick (someone) op

plan return speak

Verbs

Adverbs

in overtime tomorrow

Prepositions at : college till (7:00)

Conjunction that

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about plans

What are you doing tonight?

I'm going
Are you doing anything tomorrow

Are you doing anything tomorrow/tonight?

No. I'm not.

What is he going to do tonight?
He's going to . . .

Is he going to . tomorrow night? Yes, he is

Apologizing and giving reasons

I'm sorry, but I can't go. I'm working late. Accepting and refusing invitations

Oh, sorry, I can't.

Making a business call Good morning.

Hello, May I speak to ... please? ... not in. Can I take a message? Yes, please This is ... Would you ask ... to call me? My number is

I'll give—the message. Thank you. Good-bye Leaving and taking messages

Can/May I take a message" Please tell (that)

Please ask . . . to

Would/Could you tell (that) Would/Could you ask to ?

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Future sentences

With be going to

The verb be is always used in the be going to form - never in the present continuous.

Where are you going to be tomorrow?

I'm going to be at home.

With present continuous

Arrive, come, go, leave, and stay are usually used in the present continuous.

We're arriving tomorrow.

coming going leaving staying

unfold (v)

[An'fould]

mở ra/bày tô/bộc ló

A CHANGE FOR THE BETTER!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns
biology
course
degree
tenvironmental) education
forestry
graduation
hairstyle
kid
life/lives
(student) loan
photo album

Adjectives dressed up easy outgoing own successful

become bring about date dress fall on love; grow hope join pay off quit reture smoke start

type

Verbs

Adverbs anymore differently for ages

Prepositions at (an early age) into (a new apartment)

EXPRESSIONS

weight

Exchanging personal information
How have you been?
Pretty good.
How are you?

I'm doing really well.

Describing changes You've really changed I'm married now.

I'm married now.
I don't wear glasses anymore.
My job is easier (now).
I'm heavier (than before)
I got divorced.
I've grown a mustache

Talking about plans for the future

I'm (not) going to I (don't) plan to I (don't) want to . . . I hope to . . I'd like love to . . .

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Review: Wh-questions

What's your name?
What do you do?
What time do you get up?
What kimd of music do you like?
What color are your eyes?
What are you like?
What are you doing these days?
What did you do last night?
What do you think of Brad Pitt?

When do you got home? When are you leaving?

Where are you from?
Where do you work?
Where did you go yesterday?
Where were you?
Which jeans do you like better,
the light ones or the dark ones?
Which one is Tom?

Who is that? Who's your favorite actress? Who did you go out with last night? Who's Saruh?

How do you like your job? How do you spend your day? How did you spend your last birthday? How was your trip?

How much is that blouse? How much crime is there in your city? How many restaurants are there in your neighborhood?

How often do you exercise! How well do you play? How good are you at sports?

How long were you away? How much time do you spend at the gym?

How long do you spend working out?

How old are you? How long is your hair? How tall are you?

Why don't you buy a new car?

Appendix

COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

This is a partial list of countries, many of which are presented in this book.

Argentina Australia	Argentine Australian	Germany Greece	German Greek	the Philippines Poland	
	Austrian Brazilian	Hungary	Hungarian Indian	Russia	Russian
Bolivia	Bolivian Canadian		Indonesian Irish	Spain	Singaporean Spanish
Chile	Chilean Chinese	Italy	Italian	Switzerland Thailand	
Colombia	Colombian	Japan Korea		Peru	Turkish Peruvian
Ecuador	Costa Rican Ecuadorian	Lebanon Malaysia		the United Kingdom the United States	
Egypt England France		Maracco	Morocean	Uruguay	Uruguayan
France	French	New Zealand	New Zealander		

NUMBERS

()	1	2	3	4	5	to	7	8
zero	1	two	three	four	five	SIX	seven	eight
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
nine	ten	eleven	twelve	thirteen	fourteen	fifteen	sixteen	seventeen
15	19	20	21	22	30	40	50	60
eighteen	nineteen	twenty	twenty one	Twenty-two	thirty	forty	fifty	50xtv
70 seventy	80 eighty	. 90 ninety	one h	100 un d red to hor	idred)	one th	1.000 ousand (a th	ousand)

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

1. Adjective with ser and sest

big	dirty	high	οl d	tall
husy	dry	hot	pretty	ugly
cheap	casy	large	quiet	warm
clean	fast	light	safe	wet
close	friendly	long	scary	young
entd	tunny	mild	short	
cool	great	new	slow	
deen	heavy	DUCC	small	

2. Adiostinas with more and more

2. Aujectives	with more and mi	78 t
attractive	exciting	outgoing
beautiful	expensive	popular
bornag	famous	relaxing
crowded	important	stressful
dangerous	interesting	difficult
deficious		

3. Irregular adjectives

good → better → best bad → worse → the worst

PRONUNCIATION OF REGULAR PAST FORMS

with /d/ studied stayed

with /V worked watched

with 4d/ invited visited

IRREGULAR VERBS

Participle PresentPasttheram/is, are was, were been brought brought brang bought bought buy came come come cut cut cut did done du. drink drank drunk driven drive drove eaten eut ate flew flown fly fallen fall fell felt felt feed got gotten get given gave give gone went gu grown grow grew had have had hear heard heard kept keep kept lost lost lose

Present make meet put quit read ride cup see sell set sit sleep speak spend take teach tell think wear write

PastParticiple 5 2 2 made made met met put put quit quit read read ridden rode run ran seen Saw soldi sold set set sat sat slept slent spoke spoken spent spent took taken taught taught told told thought thought wore worn watten wrote

ANSWER KEY Unit 14, Exercise 3, page 87

- Vatican City
- 2. Angel Falls
- 3. Hong Kong
- 4. the Caspian Sea
- 5. Mount Éverest
- 6 the Nile
- 7 France
- 8, the Pacific Ocean
- (.44 square kilometers/.17 square miles)
- (979 meters/3,212 feet)
- (247,501 people per square mile)
- (378,400 square kilometers/146,101 square miles)
- (8.848 meters/29.028 feet)
- (6,670 kilometers/4,145 miles)
- (60 million tourists)
- caverage depth of 4,028 meters/13,215 feet)

ANSWER KEY Interchange 14, page IC-19

- 1. gold
- 2. Pluto (temperature = $-230^{\circ}\text{C}/-382^{\circ}\text{F}$)
- 3. Jupiter (diameter =142,984 km/88,846 miles)
- 4. a tortoise (maximum age = 150 years)
- 5. a giraffe (height = 5.5 meters/18 feet)
- 6 the liver (weight = 1,560 grams/55 ounces)
- 7. 1 liter of wine
- 8. Egypt (rainfall = 100-200 mm/4-8 inches)
- 9. Colombia (The equator runs through Colombia.
- 10. an octagon (An octagon has 8 sides.)
- 11. a mile ± 1 mile ± 1.760 yards ± 1.6 kilometers:
- 12, the Dark Ages (from around 500-1,000 A.I)

Jack C. Richards
with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor

workboc

POPULATION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF T		0011001100
一种种种类型图形型		Acknowledgments iv
作为	a bl	Please call me Chuck. 1
	2	How do you spend your day?
	3	Hov/ much is it? 13
建	4	Do you like jazz? 19
	5	Tell me about your family. 25
	6	How often do you exercise? 31
	7	We had a great time! 37
国际基本的	8	How do you like the neighborhood

- What does he look like?
- Have you ever ridden a camel? 55
- It's a very exciting city. 11 12 It really works!
 - May I take your order please? 73
- 14 The biggest and the best!
 - 15 I'm going to see a musical. A change for the better.



Please call me Chuck.

Xin gọi tôi là Chuck.

 Pleased to meet you, Bill. 	
/rite about yourself. Viết về bản thân bạ	in A Richard
In first name is	
fy last name is	
Please call me	
	A TOTAL TOTAL
/// / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	and the state of t
WIND STATE OF THE	
Names Tên	6 6 1
A Write M for male names and F for femal	e names.
1. <u>M</u> Joseph 5 Robert	MY NAME C
W Joseph 5 Robert	
	INC 15:
2 James 6 Susan	Joseph
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William	Helic My NAME IS: Joseph
2 James 6 Susan	Joseph
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer	
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n	ame above.
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n a Bob c Jenny e	ame above Liz g Sue
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n	ame above. Liz g Sue Bill
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n a 5 Bob c Jenny e b Kate d Jim f	ame above Liz g Sue
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n a Bob c Jenny e	ame above. Liz g Sue Bill
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n a 5 Bob c Jenny e b Kate d Jim f C Match the following.	ame above. Liz g Sue Joe h Bill
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n a 5 Bob c Jenny e b Kate d Jim f C Match the following.	ame above. Liz g Sue Joe h Bill
2 James 6 Susan 3 Catherine 7 William 4 Elizabeth 8 Jennifer B Match each of these nicknames with a n a 5 Bob c Jenny e b Kate d Jim f C Match the following.	ame above. Liz g Sue Joe h Bill Bill Sarah Rachel Jones
2 James	ame above. Liz g Sue Joe h Bill Sarah Rachel Jones
2 James	ame above. Liz g Sue Joe h Bill Bill Sarah Rachel Jones

3	Choose the correct re	esponses. Chon	câu đáp thích hợp

1. A: Hi, I'm Liz.	4. A: Hello, I'm William Dean. Please call me Bill.
B: Oh, hi. Oh, hi. What do people call you?	B: Pleased to meet you, Mr. Dean. Pleased to meet you, Bill.
2. A: My name is Jim Holmes.B:	5. A: Excuse me, what's your name again? B;
 Nice to meet you, Mr. Jim. Nice to meet you, Mr. Holmes. 	■ K-I-N-G. ■ Joe King.
3. A: This is Jenny Parker. B:	6. A: How do you spell your first name? B:
Nice to meet you, Ms. Parker.Hello, Ms. Jenny Parker.	I'm Charlene. C-H-A-R-L-E-N-E.
Look at the answers. What are the que	estions? Xem các câu trả lời. Các câu hỏi là gì?
e de la companya de l	5
1. Jim: What 's your first name? Bob: My first name's Bob.	Es Match each divince nic
2. Jim: WhatBob: My last name's Hayes.	1 A Ast
3. Jim: WhoBob: That's my wife.	C Mutch the following.
4. Jim: What Bob: Her name is Rosa.	☐ Mighaw Charles Kennody ☐ Kata ☐ South ☑ Me. Sarai
5. Jim: Where	
Bob: She's from Mexico.	Ms Saigh Rachel Ismes

5 Choose the correct words. Chọn các từ thích hợp



1.	They're my classmates.	Their	names are Noriko and Kate.	(They/Their)
----	------------------------	-------	----------------------------	--------------

- 2. We're students. _____ classroom number is 108-C. (Our/We)
- 3. Excuse me. What's _____ last name again? (you/your)
- 4. That's Mr. Kim. _____ is in my class. (He/His)
- 5. _____ name is Elizabeth. Please call me Liz. (I/My)
- 6. This is Paul's wife. _____ name is Jennifer. (His/Her)
- 7. My parents are on vacation, _____ are in South Korea. (We/They)
- 8. I'm from Venice, Italy. _____ is a beautiful city. (It/It's)

6	Complete this conversation with	am, arę, or is.	Hoàn chỉnh bài đ	àm thoại sau với: am,	are hoặc is
---	---------------------------------	-----------------	------------------	-----------------------	-------------

Lisa:	: Who the men over there, Amy?		
Amy:	: Oh, they on the volleyball team. Let me intro	duce you.	
	Hi, Surachai, this Lisa Neil.		
Surachai:	: Pleased to meet you, Lisa.		
	: Nice to meet you, too, Surachai. Where you f		
Surachai:	: I from Thailand.		
Amy:	: And this Mario. He from Brazil.	1./	
Lisa:	: Hi, Mario.		
Pablo:	: And my name Pablo. I from Colo	mbia.	

Hello and welcome! Chào mừng

A Can you remember the names of two students in your class? Where are they from?

1 1	lame	Where from?	?		
1					
2				143	I
					1

B Read about four students, and complete the chart below.

INTERNATIONAL 2 LANGUAGE 2 SCHOOL

Every month, we introduce new students to the school. This month, we want to introduce four new students to you. Please say "hello" when you see them in school.



Mario is in English 101. He is from Cali, Colombia. His first language is Spanish, and he also speaks a little French. He wants to be on the school volleyball team. He says he doesn't play very well, but he wants to learn!

Eileen is in Mario's class. She is from Mozambique, in southern Africa. She speaks Swahili and Portuguese. She is studying English and engineering. She wants to be an engineer. She says she does not play any sports, but she wants to make a lot of new friends in her class.





Su Yin is in English 102. She is from Taiwan. She says she can write and read English pretty well, but she needs a lot of practice speaking English. Her first language is Mandarin Chinese. In her free time, she

wants to play volleyball on the school team.

Finally, meet Ahmed. He is in English 103. He says he can speak a lot of English, but his writing is very bad! Ahmed is from Luxor in Egypt, and his first language is Arabic. He is a baseball player, and he wants to be on the school baseball team.



eyball team. Let me in		Amyr Oh, the
	any tany	nu8 117
Mozambique,	to meet you, Liss!	Surachal: Pleasen
Africa	meet you, too, Surachai.	Lisa. Nice to
	Mandarin Chinese	Surachai: I :_ V
From Brazi	and English	idt baA svmA
-		baseball
i. I	oldari Pablo	Vite book solds to
		Africa Mandarin Chinese and English

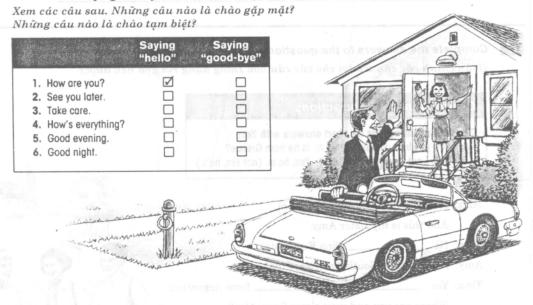
1				chinh bài c	làm thoại sau
A	nd what are you studyi	ng?			•
	o, she's not. She's my si i, Sarah. I'm Rich. How	ister!			
🗆 0	h, really? Is Susan Mill	er in your class?	ļ		
	o, I'm not. I'm on vacat	ion. Are you a stu	dent?		
Sarah:	Hello, I'm Sarah.	<u> </u>	——————————————————————————————————————		
Rich:	Hi, Sarah. I'm Rich. I	low are you?			
Sarah:	Pretty good, thanks. A	re you a student l	iere?		
					·
	Yes, I am.			•	
Rich:		· / ····	<u> </u>		<u>_</u> _
	I'm studying Spanish.				
Rich:				<u> </u>	
	Yes, she is. Is she your				
Dich.					
Comp	lete the answers to th	e questions. Us	e contractions	where possib	
Comp. Hoàn c	lete the answers to th chỉnh các cáu trả lời c	e questions. Us ho các câu hỏi. I	e contractions	where possib	
Compi Hoàn d Gra	lete the answers to th chỉnh các cấu trả lời c mmar note: Contra	le questions. Us ho các câu hỏi. I Ctions	e contractions Dùng dạng rút	where possib	
Comple Hoàn d Gra Do no	lete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời c mmar note: Contrat of use contractions for sho Are you from Argenling?	le questions. Us tho các câu hỏi. I ctions ri answers with Yes: A: Is he from Gree	e contractions Dùng dạng rút	where possib	
Comple Hoàn d Gra Do no	lete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời c mmar note: Contra ot use contractions for sho	le questions. Us tho các câu hỏi. I ctions ri answers with Yes: A: Is he from Gree	e contractions Dùng dạng rút	where possib	
Gra De no	lete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời c mmar note: Contrat of use contractions for sho Are you from Argenling?	te questions. Use the các câu hòi. I ctions rt answers with Yes: A: Is he from Greet B: Yes, he is. (not)	e contractions Dùng dạng rút	where possib	
Gra De no	lete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời commar note: Contractions for sho Are you from Argenlino? Yes, I am. (not Yes, I'm.)	te questions. Use the các câu hỏi. I ctions of answers with Yes: A: Is he from Greet B: Yes, he is. (not)	e contractions Dùng dạng rút	where possib	
Gra Do no A: B:	lete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời commar note: Contrat of use contractions for sho Are you from Argentino? Yes, I am. (not Yes, I'm.)	e questions. Use the các câu hòi. I ctions of answers with Yes: A: Is he from Greet B: Yes, he is. (not) Alex Lam.	e contractions Dùng dạng rút	where possib	
Gra Do no A: B: Tina:	lete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời commar note: Contractions for shour and	te questions. Usino các câu hỏi. Inclinations If answers with Yes: A: Is he from Green B: Yes, he is. (not) Alex Lam. Amy. In a Fernandez.	e contractions Dùng dạng rút	where possib	
Completion of Grand B: Alex: Tina: Amy:	lete the answers to the chinh cac cau tra loi commer note: Contrat of use contractions for sho Are you from Argentina? Yes, I am. (not Yes, I'm.) Hello. //m And this is my sister Are Hi Ti	e questions. Use the các câu hỏi. I ctions of answers with Yes: A: Is he from Greet B: Yes, he is. (not) Alex Lam. Amy. ona Fernandez. onerica, Tina?	e contractions Dùng dạng rút ce? Yes, he's.)	where possib	
Completion of Grand B: Alex: Tina: Amy:	lete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời làm Are you from Argenlino? Hello.	ctions rt enswers with Yes: A: Is he from Greet B: Yes, he is. (not) Alex Lam. Amy. na Fernandez. merica, Tina?	e contractions Dùng dạng rút Ce? Yes, he's.)	where possib	
Complete Hoàn de Grand B: Alex: Tina: Amy: Tina:	dete the answers to the chinh các cáu trả lời chi use contractions for sho Are you from Argenlina? Yes, I am. (not Yes, I'm.) Hello. //m And this is my sister Are you from South Aryes,	re questions. Use the các câu hỏi. It ctions of answers with Yes: A: Is he from Greet B: Yes, he is. (not) Alex Lam. Amy. na Fernandez. merica, Tina? from, Alex sister from, Alex	e contractions Dùng dạng rút Ce? Yes, he's.)	where possib	

Say, are you in English 101?
Tina: No, ________ . I'm in English 102.

10 Look at the answers. What are the questions? Xen	m các câu trả lời.	Các câu hỏi là gì?
---	--------------------	--------------------

1.	A:	Are you on vacation here?
		No, I'm not on vacation. I'm a student here.
9	A:	
۷.	B:	No, we're not from Spain. We're from Mexico.
3.	A:	
0.		No, they're not on the same baseball team. They're on the same volleyball team.
4.	A:	
	B:	Yes, Kim and Mika are in my class.
5.	A:	
	B:	Yes, it's a nice class.
6.	A:	
	B:	No, my teacher isn't Mr. Brown. I'm in Ms. West's class. degange garybuta at Tanana

Look at the statements. Which statements say "hello"? Which ones say "good-bye"?



12	Answer these questions about yourself. Use contractions where possible.					
	1. Where are you from?	Alexander and a second a second and a second a second and				
	2. Are you on vacation?	Say, are you in langush 1017				

Are you a student at a university?

4. Are you studying English?

How do you spend your day?

Ngày của bạn như thế nào?

SECURIOR SEC						
1	Match the words in columns	A and B.	Write the	names	of the	jobs.

Xếp các từ trong cột a và b cho thích hợp. Viết tên các nghề

A	В	for health and the	Action Co.
company	officer	1. company director	
disc	☐ processor	2.	
word	director	3.	The second
police	☐ guide	4.	Dept. Po.
☐ security	☐ jockey	5	
□ tour	☐ guard	6.	

Write the sentences. Use He or She. Viết các câu. Dùng he hoặc she

1. I'm a security guard. I work in a department store. I guard the store at night.

He's a security guard. He works in a department store. He guards the store at night.

2. I work in a travel agency and take people on tours. I'm a tour guide.

She

I work in an office. I'm a word processor.
 I like computers a lot.

He

 I'm a disc jockey. I work in a nightclub. I play music.

She









Write a or an in the correct places. Viết a hoặc an vào chỗ thích hợp

Grammar note: Articles a and an

Use $a + \sin \alpha$ singular noun before a consonant sound. Use an + singular noun before a vowel sound.

He is a carpenter.

He is an architect.

He is a good carpenter.

He is an expensive architect.

Do not use a or an + plural nouns:

They are carpenters.

They are expensive architects.



- 1. He's carpenter. He works for construction 4. She's architect. She works for large company. company. He builds schools and hospitals.
- 2. She works for travel company and arranges tours. She's travel agent.
- 3. He has interesting job. He's teacher. He works in high school.
- She builds houses. It's great job.
- 5. She works with computers in office. She's word processor. She's also part-time student. She takes English class in the evening.

Complete this conversation with the correct words.
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại sau với các từ thích hợp
Tom: What does your husband exactly? (do/does)
Liz: He for a department store. He's a store manager.
Tom: How he it? (like/likes)
Liz: It's an interesting job. He it very much. (like/likes)
But he long hours. And what you (do/does)
Tom: I'm a student. I architecture architecture.
Liz: Oh, really? Where you to school? (go/goes)
Tom: I to Lincoln University. My wife, Jenny, there, too. (go/goes) (go/goes)
Liz: Really? And what she ? (do/does) (study/studies)
Tom: She hotel management. (study/studies)
Liz: That sounds interesting.
Complete the questions in this conversation. Hown chinh bài đảm thoại sau
Mark. Where do you work?
Victor: I work for American Express.
Mark: And what there?
Victor: I'm in management.
Mark: How
Victor: It's a great job. And what
Mark: I'm a salesperson.
Victor: Really? What
Mark: I sell computers. Do you want to buy one?

Read these two interviews, and answer the questions.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu hỏi trong bài đàm thoại sau 🦙



Today, Job Talk interviews two people with interesting jobs.



Job Talk: Felix, where do you work?

Felix: I work at home, and I work in

Europe a lot.

Job Talk: Really? Well, what do you do at home?

Felix: I'm a chef. I practice cooking new

things, and then I write cookbooks.

Job Talk: That sounds interesting. And what do you do in Europe?

Felix: I make TV programs about

Chinese cooking.

Job Talk: You have an interesting life, Felix.

Felix: Yes, but it's hard work!

Job Talk: How do you like your job, Julia?

Julia: I love it, but I work long hours.

Job Talk: Do you work late?

Julia: Yes, I work until eight or nine

o'clock in the evening. But I take three or four hours for lunch.

Job Talk: Really! But what do you do exactly?

Julia: I stay in all the best new hotels

and . . .

Job Talk: Are you a hotel manager?

Julia: No. I'm an electrician! I do the electrical work in new hotels.

1. What does Felix do?

2. What does he do in Europe?

3. When does Julia finish work?

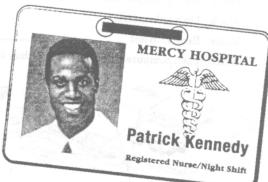
4. What does she do?

She

Meet Pat. Write questions about Pat using What, Where, and How.

Đọc hai bài phỏng vấn sau và trả lời các câu hỏi. Hãy gặp Pat. Viết các câu hỏi về Pat dùng what, where, và how.

1. How does he spend his day?



around	at	□ before	□ early	□in	late	🗹 on	until
Everyone knowight nurse. It is a sturdays an wakes up a like evening, usually arow	ws Pat at He cares f d Sunday ttle ally at 8:4 9:30 or eleven midnig nd 5 A.M.,	the hospital for patients a rs, Pat sleeps n 5 or 8:50. He 10:00 P.M.! I o'clock, and ght.	. Pat is a par t night most of the c ine e has breakfa He watches to then starts v in th ork, has a litt	day and the st very latelevision work the morning	e e e,		
goes home, g hard schedul				103 a			71.50 to 0.00 to
answer	□ s ☑ s	erves \square	types works writes		veb.		. 5
4 Brandor 5 Ellen _	wo in in in up ea	rk at 5:00 P.M. n a restaurar	A. orning. good Tha		7		70 J
9 Rodney 10 Andrea	to	bed after mi	dnight. the pl	hone	sh-	ec latin of	1 220°C 2766
Down 2 Linda is		uide. She	people or	n tours.			
		it five letters					

	 ☐ He goes to the universit ☐ She serves food in a res ☐ She stays up late. ☐ What does he do? ☑ He's an aerobics teached ☐ He works part time. 	taurant.	
1.	He teaches aerobics.		
	He's an aerobics teacher		
2.	Where does he work?		
3.	She's a waitress.		
4.	He's a student.		
5.	She goes to bed at midnigh	t.	
6.	He works four hours every	day.	
FII Di	in the missing words or ển vào các từ hoặc cụm từ c 1. □ at night □ part time □ weekends ☑ nurses	phrases from these job advert on thieu các mẫu rao việc sau 2. Interesting Spanish tours	3. manager long hours restaurant until
Fil	ến vào các từ hoặc cụm từ c 1. □ at night □ part time □ weekends	òn thiểu các mẫu rao việc sau 2. □ Interesting □ Spanish	3. manager long hours restaurant
Fil	én vào các từ hoặc cụm từ c 1. □ at night □ part time □ weekends ⊡ nurses New York Hospital needs	òn thiểu các mẫu rao việc sau 2. □ Interesting □ Spanish	3. manager long hours restaurant until
Fil	én vào các từ hoặc cụm từ c 1. at night part time weekends nurses New York Hospital needs nurses	on thieu các mẫu rao việc sau 2. □ Interesting □ Spanish □ tours	3. manager long hours restaurant until
Fill	én vào các từ hoặc cụm từ c 1. ☐ at night ☐ part time ☐ weekends ☑ nurses New York Hospital needs nurses Work during the day or	in thieu các mẫu rao việc sau 2.	3. manager long hours restaurant until No need to work Only work from 6:00

These sentences usually have the same meaning. Các cấu sau thường có nghĩa giống nh

How much is it?

Giá bao nhiêu?

Choose the correct sentences to complete this conversation.

Chọn các câu thích hợp để hoàn chính bài đàm thoại sau

onder care control of the	
 □ Which one? ☑ Which ones? □ Oh, Sam. Thank you very much. □ Well, I like it, but it's expensive. □ Yes. But I don't really like light blue! 	
Sam: Look at those pants, Rebecca.	
Rebecca: Which ones?	
Sam: The light blue ones over there. They	Vre nice.
Rebecca:	
Sam: Hmm. Well, what about that sweater	er? It's perfect for you.
Rebecca:	
Sam: This red one.	
Rebecca:	
Sam: Hey, let me buy it for you. It's a pre	esent!
Rebecca:	

Complete these conversations with How much is/are . . . ? and this, that, these, or those.

Hoàn chính các bài đàm thoại sau với how much is/are...! Và this, that, these hoặc those

1. A: How much is this backpack?
B: It's \$31.99.

2. A: bracelets?
B: They're \$29.

3. A: shoes?
B: They're \$64.

4. A: dog?
B: That's my dog, and he's not for sale!









Write the plurals of these words.

Viết số nhiều của các từ sau

Spelling note: Plural noun	s
----------------------------	---

Most words: QDD

Words ending in -ss, -sh, -ch, and -x:

CODS shoe shoes

glass glosses watch watches

Words ending in -fe: knife knives

Words ending in consonant + -y:

country countries

1. backpack	backpacks	7. necklace	
2. bookshelf		8. ring	
3. dress		9. scarf	
4. company		10. sweater	
5. glove		11. tie	
6. hairbrush		12. dish	

What do you think of these prices? Write a response.

Bạn nghĩ gi về các giá sau ? Viết một cấu đáp

That's cheap.

That's not bad.

That's reasonable.

That's pretty expensive!

1. \$90 for a tie

That's pretty expensive!

- 2. \$10 for two scarves
- 3. \$500 for a dress
- 4. \$40 for gloves
- 5. \$2,000 for a computer
- 6. \$5 for two hairbrushes



5 Choose the correct words to complete these conversations.

Chọn các từ thích hợp để hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại sau



1. Clerk:	Good afternoon.	
Luis:	Oh, hi. How much is thus (this/these)	watch
Clerk:	lt's \$195.	
Luis:	And how much is that(one/ones)	?
Clerk.	\$255. (It's/They're)	
Luis	Oh, really? Well, thanks, anyway.	

2. Kim:	Excuse me. How much are jut (that/those)	eans'
Clerk:	(It's/They're) only \$59.	
Kim	: And how much is sweater?	
Clerk	Which ? They're all differen (one/ones)	t.
Kim	: I like this green (one/ones)	
Clerk	(It's/They're) \$34.	
Kim	: Well, that's not bad.	





3.	Sonia:	I like	sunglasses over there.
		(that/those)	
	Clerk:	Which	_ ?
		(one/ones)	
	Soma:	The small brown	
		ı	(one/ones)
	Clerk:	\$199	l.
		(It's/They're)	
	Sonia:	Oh, they're expensive	e!

What do you make out of these materials? Complete the chart. Use words from the list. (You will use words more than once.)

Bạn tạo được những món đố nào từ các vật liệu sau! Hoàn chính bằng, dùng các từ từ bằng kê (bạn sẽ dùng các từ hơn một lần)

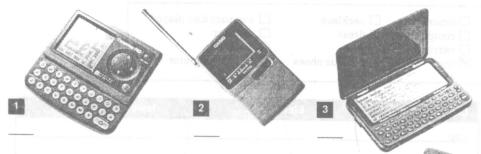
boots	pants	bracelet	ring	gloves	shirt	iacket	necklace
				B-0100		Jucaeci	HOCKIACE

Cotton	Gold	Leather	Silk	Plastic	Wool
pants					
	į				
			:	į	
	•				
<u> </u>					

	g the words given. Add than if necessary. : từ được cho sắn. Thêm than nếu cần	
41.	A: These cotton gloves are nice.	
cotton gloves	B: Yes, but the leather ones arenicer_	(nice)
	A: They're also	(expensive)
leather glo	ves	silk jackets
the wool ones. (att	ractive)	<i>b</i> 101
B: Yes, but the wool one	es are (warm)	
purple shirt	wool jacke	ets (
St. 1. X	A: This purple shirt is an interesting color! B: Yes, but the color is the design. (pretty)	
	A: The design isn't bad.	
red shirt	B: I think the design on that red shirt is the design on this purple one. (good)	© \$650
4. A: Hey, look at this gold		
And it's	that silver ring. (cheap)	
B: But it's	the silver one. (small)	
A: Well, yeah. The silver But look at the price for a ring!	one is the gold one. (tag. One thousand dollars is a lot of money	big)

☐ bracelet ☐ computer ☐ earrings ☑ cap	☐ necklace ☐ dress ☐ ring ☐ athletic shoes	compact disc player sweater television laptop computer		
Clothing	Elec	ctronics J	ewelry	
сар			1000	
-		.837.0303	e dda amil ane p	Majaretta Ak
	e thus \$0,000 yeards	and pre-medicates and base		0.000.000
	<u>.</u>	blue, \$10a SO.		
	and murchess	La , essection and the same		AS II INDA
	2 and 2	ms 29V(1) 3	4 1/10/39	5
small earrings	wool cap	high-top shoes lap	otop computer	19-inch televisio
			TAU EDUS	
small earrings	wool cap	high-top shoes lay	RAU ZODO	19-inch televisio
large earrings	leather cap		desktop	
large earrings 1. Which ones deal prefer the second	leather cap o you prefer, the sma	tennis shoes ll earrings or the large ear	desktop computer rrings?	
large earrings 1. Which ones deal prefer the second	leather cap o you prefer, the sma	tennis shoes	desktop computer rrings?	
large earrings 1. Which ones deal prefer the second to th	leather cap o you prefer, the sma mall ones. you like more, the w	tennis shoes ll earrings or the large ear	desktop computer rrings?	25-inch television

Great gadgets! Những vật dụng tuyệt với



A Match the ads and the pictures.

- a. Find the correct spelling and pronunciation of more than 80,000 words with this electronic dictionary! Made of strong plastic. Comes in two colors, dark gray or light blue. \$104.50.
- b. Use the electronic address book for the names and addresses of all your friends. Takes up to 400 names, addresses, and phone numbers. Plastic case included. Regular model \$59.95. Desktop model available for \$64.95.
- c. Watch your favorite baseball game at work or at school! This TV fits in your pocket, only 6" × 1" (15 cm × 2 cm). Gives an excellent picture. Yours for only \$299.50.
- d. Problems with a crossword puzzle? Try this crossword puzzle solver! Simply key in the letters you know and a "?" for the ones you don't know. In seconds, the gadget fills the blanks. Has a database of 130,000 words. Great value at only \$49.95.

B Check () True or False.

True	False
lance and to the same	
	True

	your favorite? Number thit the most) to 4 (you like	
 electronic	dictionary	pocket television
 electronic	address book	crossword puzzle solver

jazz

Do you like jazz?

Bạn có thích nhạc jazz không?

Check (/) the boxes to complete the survey about music and movies. Đánh dấu (v) các ô để hoàn chính bảng thăm dò về âm nhạc và phim ảnh

now offer	uu you i	istell to these ty	Ahea ni iimai	16 :
	Often	Sometimes	Not often	
pop		ng Signer are	Hot of	
classical				
gospel				
- a alı				

w after de you listen to those times of mucic?

M									
Ц	How	often	do	you	watch	these	types	of	movies'

	Often	Sometimes	Not often
science fiction			
horror films			
thrillers			
westerns			
comedies			

What do you think of these kinds of entertainment? Answer the questions with the expressions and pronouns in the box.

Bạn nghĩ gì về các loại giải trí này? Trả lời các câu hỏi bằng các cách diễn đạt và đại từ trong khung

Object pronouns
him
her
it them

1. Do you like jazz?

Yes. I do. I like it a lot.

- 2. Do you like Tom Cruise?
- 3. Do you like rap?
- 4. Do you like Demi Moore?
- 5. Do you like TV game shows?
- 6. Do you like soap operas?





3 Choose the correct job for each picture.	Chọn nghề thích hợp cho mỗi hình
--	----------------------------------

an actor a rock group a pop singer a TV talk show host



1. Mariah Carey is _



2. The Rolling Stones are _



3. Oprah Winfrey is ______ 4. Bruce Willis is



Complete these conversations. Hoàn chỉnh các bài dàm thoại sau

Ed: Do you like country music, Sarah? Sarah: Yes, I _____ it a lot. I'm a real fan of Garth Brooks. Ed: Oh, _____ he play the guitar?

Sarah: Yes, he ______ . He's my favorite musician. 2. Anne: _____ kind of music ____

your parents _____, Jason?

Jason: They _____ classical music.

Anne: Who _____ they ____ ? Mozart?

Jason: No, they _____ like him very much. They prefer Beethoven.

3. Scott: Teresa, ______ you _____ Mariah Carey?

Teresa: No, I ______ . I can't stand her. I like Celine Dion.

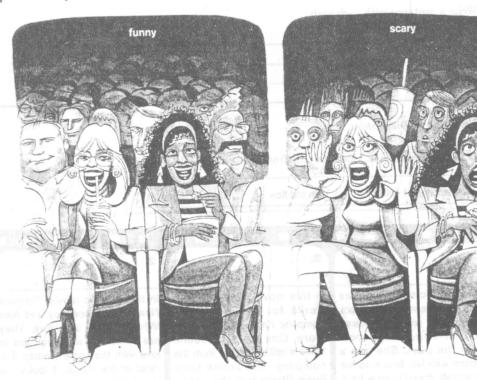
Scott: I don't know her. What kind of music _____ she sing?

Teresa: She _____ pop songs. She's really great!



5	Complete these questions and write answers. Hoàn	chỉnh các câu hỏi sau và viết các câu trả lời
	1. What kinds of movies do you like?	new ristway nestical moin shall W
	2 is your favorite movie?	l sa gach word only once
	3 of TV shows do you like?	
	4 is your favorite TV actor or actress?	
	5 is your favorite song?	costs with
	and is your favorite rock group?	

6 What do you think? Answer these questions. Ban nghĩ gi? Trả lời các câu hỏi sau



- Which films are funnier, horror films or comedies?

 Comedies are funnier than horror films:
- 2. Which movies are more interesting, thrillers or science fiction films?
- 3. Which films are scarier, horror films or thrillers?
- 4. Which films are more exciting, comedies or thrillers?

the piano	watch	✓ the piano ☐ the quitar
and plants		the piano the guitar videos a film the trumpet CDs music
Write a sentence with each		weer do you think? Answe
	verb.	
		TV PARTY
lovie guide Diểm phim		
1.	2.	3
A crazy scientist makes	In this movie, Rosie Stamp	In this classic marie Tone
a time machine and travels back in time 1,000 years. She learns	works for an electronics	In this classic movie, Teren Neal is the good guy and Al
a time machine and travels back in time 1,000 years. She learns some interesting things about ife in the past. She has a	works for an electronics company. As usual, she is very funny. One night, someone takes a million dollars from the	Neal is the good guy and Al White is the bad guy. Th are cowboys, and they are
a time machine and travels back in time 1,000 years. She learns some interesting things about ife in the past. She has a problem with her time machine and almost doesn't come back	works for an electronics company. As usual, she is very funny. One night, someone takes a million dollars from the company. The police think Rosie Stamp took the money.	Neal is the good guy and Al White is the bad guy. Th are cowboys, and they are love with the same woman. F most of the movie, it looks li
a time machine and travels back in time 1,000 years. She learns some interesting things about ife in the past. She has a	works for an electronics company. As usual, she is very funny. One night, someone takes a million dollars from the company. The police think Rosie Stamp took the money. But it's all a big mistake. The	Neal is the good guy and Al White is the bad guy. The are cowboys, and they are love with the same woman. It most of the movie, it looks little bad guy will marry he it looks like she prefers him. B
a time machine and travels back in time 1,000 years. She learns some interesting things about ife in the past. She has a problem with her time machine and almost doesn't come back to the present. But everything is	works for an electronics company. As usual, she is very funny. One night, someone takes a million dollars from the company. The police think Rosie Stamp took the money.	Neal is the good guy and Al White is the bad guy. The are cowboys, and they are love with the same woman. It most of the movie, it looks lithe bad guy will marry he
a time machine and travels back in time 1,000 years. She learns some interesting things about ife in the past. She has a problem with her time machine and almost doesn't come back to the present. But everything is	works for an electronics company. As usual, she is very funny. One night, someone takes a million dollars from the company. The police think Rosie Stamp took the money. But it's all a big mistake. The	Neal is the good guy and Al White is the bad guy. The are cowboys, and they are love with the same woman. It most of the movie, it looks lit the bad guy will marry he lt looks like she prefers him. Be of course, the good guy marrisher in the end.

9 Choose the correct responses. Chọn câu đáp thích hợp

- 1. A: Would you like to see a movie this weekend?
 - B: That sounds great!
 - That sounds great!
 - I don't agree.
- 2. A: Do you like gospel music?

B: ___

- I can't stand it.
- I can't stand them.
- 3. A: There's a baseball game tonight.

B:

- Thanks. I'd love to.
- Great. Let's go.
- 4. A: What do you think of Tina Turner?

B:

- How about you?
- I'm not a real fan of hers.



10 Yes or no? Nhận lời hay từ chối?

A Jake invites friends to a movie. Do people accept the invitation or not? Check (✓) Yes or No for each response.

Accept?	Yes	No
I'd love to, but I have to work		
until midnight. 2. I'd love to. What time does it start? 3. Thanks. I'd really like to. What time		
do you want to meet? 4. Thanks, but I'm not a real fan of his. 5. That sounds great.		



- B Respond to these invitations.
- 1. I have tickets to a rap concert on Saturday. Would you like to go?
- 2. There's a soccer game tonight. Would you like to go with me?

11	Choose	the	correct	phrases	to	complete	these	conversations.	

Chọn các cụm từ thích hợp để hoàn chỉnh các bài dàm thoại sau 1. Robin: Do you like gospel music, Kate? (Do you like/Would you like) Kate: Yes, I do. (I like/I'd like) it a lot. Robin: There's a concert on Friday. (Do you like/Would you like) to go with me? Kate: Yes, . Thanks. (I love to/I'd love to) 2. Carlos: _ to go to a French film at 11:00 tonight? (Do you like/Would you like) _ , but I have to study tonight. (I like to/I'd like to) Carlos: Well, _ Brazilian films? (do you like/would you like) Phil: Yes, I ______. I love them! (do/would) Carlos: There's a great Brazilian movie on TV tomorrow. _ to watch it with me? (Do you like/Would you like) . Thanks. (I like to/I'd love to) Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given. Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, dùng các từ được cho sắn 1. Do you like jazz? What do you think of jazz? (think of) Richard doesn't like classical music. ___ (can't stand) 3. I think horror films are great! She doesn't like country music. (be a fan of) 5. Do you want to go to a baseball game? (would like)

Tell me about your family.

☑ aunt □ nephew	☑ brother ☐ niece	daughter sister	father son	☐ hush		☐ moth ☐ wife
Male			Female			
brother		4	aunt	+		······································
	+ $+$			Y	•	·
				— I —		
n 1 . 4 . 4 h i .		n like the oresi	ent continuou	is of the V	erbs 🛭	iven.
Complete this	conversatio	n. Use the prese au Dùng thì hiệi	e nt continuou r tai tiếp diễn (i s of the V của đông t	erbs g ử được	i ven. : cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố	ii đàm thoại s	au. Dùng thi hiệi	n tại tiếp diễn (của động t	erbs g ừ được	i ven. cho sắn
<i>Hoàn chỉnh bố</i> Joel: You lo ok	ii đàm thoại s tired, Don	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi	n tại tiếp diễn (của động t	erbs g ù được	i iven. cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni	ii <i>dàm thoại s</i> tired, Don. <u> </u>	au. Dùng thi hiệi <u>Are you studyi</u> s?	n tại tiếp diễn (ng (study)	của động t	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n	ii dàm thoại s tired, Don ght these days iot. My brothe	au. Dùng thi hiệi <u>Are you studyi</u> s? r and sister	n tại tiếp diễn (<u>ng</u> (study)	của động t	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me	ii dàm thoại s tired, Don ght these days iot. My brothe right now. We	au. Dùng thì hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m	n tại tiếp diễn (n <u>g</u> (study) nidnight every	của động t	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V	ti dàm thoại s tired, Don ght these days ot. My brothe right now. We What	au. Düng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m	n tại tiếp diễn (ng(study) idnight every (do) this	của động t (sta night.	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V summer	ti dàm thoại s tired, Don ght these days ot. My brothe right now. We What	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m	n tại tiếp diễn (ng (study) nidnight every (do) this (take) classe	của động t (sta night. s, too?	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V summer' Don: No, they	ti dâm thoạt s tired, Don ght these days tot. My brothe right now. We What aren't. My bro	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m	n tại tiếp diễn (ng (study) lidnight every (do) this (take) classe on now, but he	của động t (sta night. s, too?	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V summer Don: No, they	tired, Don ght these days not. My brothe right now. We What aren't. My bro	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m other is on vacati (look) for a p	n tại tiếp diễn (ng (study) nidnight every (do) this (take) classe on now, but he art-time job he	của động t (sta night. .s., too? ^	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V summer' Don: No, they	tired, Don ght these days not. My brothe right now. We What aren't. My bro	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m	n tại tiếp diễn (ng (study) nidnight every (do) this (take) classe on now, but he art-time job he	của động t (sta night. .s., too? ^	ừ được	cho sắn
Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V summer Don: No, they Joel: What ab (work)?	tired, Don ght these days not. My brothe right now. We What aren't. My bro	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m other is on vacati (look) for a p	n tại tiếp diễn (ng (study) nd (do) this (take) classe on now, but he art-time job he	của động t (sta night. .s., too? ^	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V summer Don: No, they Joel: What ab (work)?	tired, Don ght these days not. My brothe right now. We What aren't. My bro	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m other is on vacati (look) for a p	n tại tiếp diễn (ng (study) nd (do) this (take) classe on now, but he art-time job he	của động t (sta night. .s., too? ^	ừ được	cho sắn
Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm n with me Joel: Really? V summer' Don: No, they Joel: What ab (work)? Don: Yes, she	tired, Don	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m other is on vacati (look) for a p r?	n tại tiếp diễn ong (study) didnight every (do) this (take) classe on now, but he art-time job he	của động t (stanight. s, too?	ừ được	cho sắn
Hoàn chỉnh bố Joel: You look late at ni Don: No, I'm r with me Joel: Really? V summer Don: No, they Joel: What ab (work)? Don: Yes, she What ab	tired, Don ght these days not. My brothe right now. We What aren't. My bro out your siste is. She has a pout you, Joel?	au. Dùng thi hiệi Are you studyi s? r and sister go to bed after m other is on vacati (look) for a p r? part-time job at t	ntui tiép diễn ing (study) idnight every ing (do) this (take) classe on now, but he art-time job he he university.	của động t (stanight. s, too?	ừ được	cho sắn

but I _____(start) Japanese.

Don: Really? That's exciting!

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given.

Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, dùng các từ được cho sắn

1.	Joseph	is	Maria's	uncle.
----	--------	----	---------	--------

Maria is Joseph's niece.	
	(niece

2. Liz is married to Peter.

Peter is		
	and the second control of the second control of	(husband)

3. I'm single.

(married)

4. We have two children.

(son and daughter)

My wife's father is a painter.

(father-in-law)

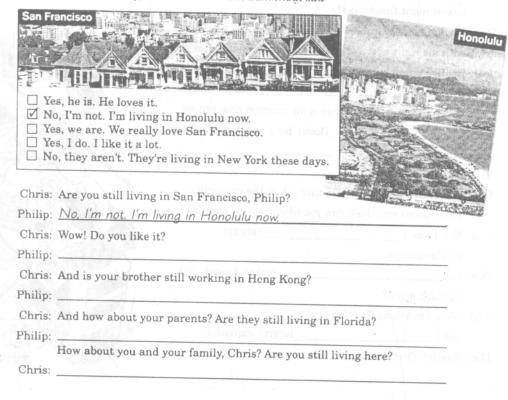
6. Michael does not have a job right now.

(look for)

4

Choose the correct sentences to complete this conversation.

Chọn các câu thích hợp để hoàn chính bài đàm thoại sau



Complete these sentences. Use the simple present or the present continuous of the verbs given.

Hoàn chính các câu sau. Dùng thì hiện tại đơn hoặc thì hiện tại tiếp diễn của các động từ được cho sắn

1.	This is my aunt Barbara.	
8.0	She lives	
The Late of the Year	rafficatorso riadi diiwasii:	(visit) Chile this summer.
		(have) a summer house there.
2 John Company		
Company States	And these are my parents.	(work) in Landon
Families via		
many Asian or	but	
Mong Kong, M. Sang, M	my aunt in Chile this month.	
3 1		
	. And here you can see my gra	ndparents.
nsgs		(live) in New York
end Level bring policy	but roi sixil yedd eige	(stay)
be a man display of the party of	at my parents' house in Long	
SHW SVI OF STATE OF STATE OF	walone, but some	
A constant that the party A		
	A. This is my brother-in-law Ed	lward.
	se. Por statements tont are fal	_ (want) to be a company
- Charles	director.	(study) business
	in Canada right now.	
- 5 MAN		
公 是 3 年 7		
	5. And this is my niece Christi	
	a visit disease a visit disease	_ (go) to high school.
77	amaind nam triw e	(like) mathematics, but
6	she doesn't like English.	
A STAN		4. Not mony students live wit
6		(know) this person
	of course. It's me.	

Home or away?

 \vec{O} lại nhà hay ra điệ

A Answer these questions. Then read the passage.

- At what age do most young people leave their parents' home in your country?
- Do some young people live with their parents after they get married? _____

Leaving Home

oung people leave their parents' homes at different ages in different parts of the world. In the United States, a lot of college students do not live at home. Many choose to go to college in different cities – away from their parents. At college, they live in university housing. After college, most people prefer to live in their own homes. They often live alone, but some people rent apartments with others.

These people are roommates. By the age of 22, few young people in the United States live with their parents.

Families stay together longer in many Asian countries and cities. In Hong Kong, for example, nearly all university students live with their parents. Rents in the city are very expensive, and few students have the money to pay for their own apartments.

Very few young people live alone or become roommates in a shared apartment. Many young people in Hong Kong continue to live with their parents after they marry.

B Check (✓) True or False. For statements that are false, write the true information.

In the United States	True	False
Very few students live in university housing.		
2. Some young adults share apartments with roommates.		
3. Nearly all young adults live with their parents.		
In Hong Kong	True	False
	IIIUG	raise
4. Not many students live with their parents.		
4. Not many students live with their parents. 5. Few young people live alone.		

a lot of	no no	1 all	6	
most	☐ few	2	7	
a few	not many	3.	8.	
nearly all	many	4.	9	1
🗹 all	some	5	10.	
Rewrite these	sentences using	g the determiners gi	ven.	
		t hạn định được cho sơ		Percentage of children in
A hundred pe	rcent of children many	start school before the go to school after the	age of five.	school by age 5
Many childr	en start school b	pefore the age of five.		79.
		The state of the s		90
	The San San			40
				30
				20
				10-
2 Ninety five	percent of young	neonle get a joh after t	hev finish	
high school.	Only twenty perc	people get a job after t ent go to college.	hey finish	before a sge 5 a
high school.	percent of young pooling twenty perc	people get a job after t ent go to college.	hey finish	10-
high school.	Only twenty perc	people get a job after t ent go to college.	hey finish	What they do aftr finishing school
high school.	Only twenty perc	people get a job after t ent go to college.	hey finish	What they do aftr
high school.	Only twenty perc	people get a job after to ent go to college.	hey finish	What they do after finishing school
high school.	Only twenty perc	people get a job after the ent go to college.	hey finish	What they do aftr finishing school
high school.	Only twenty perc	people get a job after to ent go to college.	hey finish	What they do after finishing school
high school.	Only twenty perc	ent go to college.	some rly you up. Not many lawacod/etay augother industrigles popula rer move awnysh, va at ha	What they do after finishing school What they do after finishing school Output Outp
high school.	Only twenty perc	ent go to college.	some rly young Sot many invorced stay a sethe indistingly peouls rei move awnyrhye at lia senferices about	What they do after finishing school What they do after finishing school where the fi
high school. nearly all About thirty fifteen perce	Only twenty perc	ent go to college.	me jobs — only about	What they do after finishing school What they do after finishing school or get a job go to co
high school. nearly all About thirty fifteen perce	Only twenty perc	ent go to college.	me jobs — only about	What they do after finishing school What they do after finishing school 90 90 40 30 get a job go to co

9 Choose the correct words or phrases to complete this paragraph.

Chọn các từ hoặc cụm từ thích hợp để hoàn chỉnh đoạn sau



world to did.	Level on to college	and vinous wire a lookly wheel
In my country, some	couples	(couples/cousins/relatives)
get married fairly young. Not n	nany marriages	
(break up/get divorced/stay tog	gether), and nearly all	
(divorced/married/single) peop	le remarry. Elderly couples of	ten
(divorce again/move away/live	at home) and take care of the	eir grandchildren.

Complete these sentences about your country. Use the words in the box.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu sau về nước của ban. Dùng các từ trong khung

	percentic	Swill-Allta	becrue	e people like to travel
all most	a lot of	some	few	stay with their grad
I think	у	oung peop	ole go to	the university.
2. I think	p	eople stud	ly Englis	sh.

3. I'm not sure, but I think _____ married couples have more than five children.

4. I think _____ elderly people have part-time jobs.

How often do you exercise?

Bạn có tập luyện thường xuyên không?

Complete the chart. Use words from the list.
(Some of the words can be both individual sports and exercise.)

Hoàn chính bảng. Dùng các từ từ bảng kê (một số từ có thể là môn thể thao cá nhân vừa là môn thể dục)

basketball yoga swimming baseball jogging football

aerobics bicycling tennis



Arrange these words to make sentences.

Sắp xếp lại các từ sau để tạo thành câu

- 1. go never I almost bicycling
 | almost never go bicycling.
- 2. hardly they tennis play ever
- 3. go do often jogging how you
- 4. often mornings do on we yoga Sunday
- 5. ever Charlie do does aerobics
- 6. do on you what usually Saturdays do

Viết các câu hói c	ho các câu so	ıu. Düng hou	ofen do you?	Do you ever	? Và what do yo	u us
. A: Do you ev	er exercise?					
B: Yes, I ofter			-			
. A:						
B: Well, I usu	ally do karate	e on Saturda	ys and yoga on	Sundays.		
A:						
B: No, I never	go to the gyr	m after work				
A:						
B: I don't exe	rcise very ofte	en at all.				
i. A:						
B: Yes, I some	etimes play sp	ports on weel	kends – usually	y haseball.		
5. A:						
B: I usually p	lay tennis in	my free time	. .			
		o each of the	things in the c	hart.		
A Check (✓) ho		Опсе	things in the c	Not	Never	
A Check (✓) ho	w often you de				Never	
A Check (✓) how	w often you de	Once or twice		Not very	Never	
A Check (🗸) hordoned do aerobics do karate	w often you de	Once or twice		Not very	Never	
A Check (🗸) hor do aerobics do karate go jogging go swimming	w often you de	Once or twice		Not very	Never	
do aerobics do karate go jogging ga swimming exercise	w often you do	Once or twice		Not very	Never	
A Check (🗸) hor do aerobics do karate go jogging go swimming	w often you do	Once or twice		Not very	Never	
do aerobics do karate go jogging ga swimming exercise play basketbal	w often you de	Once or twice a week	Sometimes	Not very often	Never	
do aerobics do karate go jogging ga swimming exercise play basketbal B Write about y For example:	w often you de	Once or twice a week	Sometimes	Not very often		
do aerobics do karate go jogging ga swimming exercise play basketbal B Write about y For example:	every day Courself using	Once or twice a week the informa	Sometimes	Not very often		
do aerobics do karate go jogging ga swimming exercise play basketbal B Write about y For example:	w often you de	Once or twice a week the informa	Sometimes	Not very often		

Complete this conversation.

Write the correct prepositions in the correct places.

Hoàn chính bài đảm thoại sau - viết các giới từ đúng vào chỗ thích hợp

Susan: What time do you go jogging the morning, Jerry? (around/in/on)

Jerry: I always go jogging seven o'clock. (at/for/on)

How about you, Susan?

Susan: I usually go jogging noon. (around/in/with)

I jog about an hour. (at/for/until)

Jerry: And do you also play sports your free time? (at/in/until)

Susan: Not very often. I usually go out my classmates in my free time. (around/for/with)

What about you?

Jerry: I go to the gym Mondays and Wednesdays. (at/on/until)

And sometimes I go bicycling weekends. (for/in/on)

Susan: Wow! You really like to stay in shape.

6

Complete the crossword puzzle.

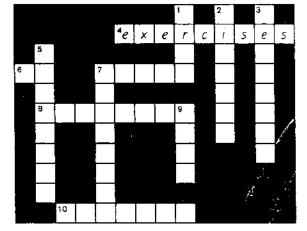
Hoàn chính bằng đổ chữ

Across

- 4 Pierre never _____ . He's a real couch potato.
- 6 How often do you ____ yoga?
- 7 I like to stay in ______. I play sports every day.
- 8 Jeff does weight _____ every evening. He lifts weights of 40 kilos.
- 10 Diana goes ____ for three miles twice a week.

Down

- 1 Andrew always watches TV in his _____ time.
- 2 Kate has a regular ____ program.
- 3 I do _____ at the gym three times a week. The teacher plays great music!



- 5 Paul is on the _____ team at his high school.
- 7 Marie never goes ____ when the water is cold.
- 9 Amy _____ bicycling twice a month.

Choose your activity.

Chọn hoạt động của ban

A Read these ads.



B Where can you do these activities? Check (✓) the answers.

	Hiking Club	Adult Education Program	YWCA/ YMCA
Play indoor sports Do outdoor activities Take evening classes Go dancing Learn to cook Meet new people			

8 Choose the correct responses.

Chọn các lời đáp đúng



332	
1. A: How often do you go swimming, Linda? B. Once a week.	4. A: How good are you at other sports? B:
I guess I'm OK.Once a week.About an hour.	 Not too good, actually. I sometimes play twice a week. Pretty well, I guess.
2. A: How long do you spend in the swimming pool? B:	5. A: How much time do you spend working out?
 About 45 minutes. About average. About three miles. 	B: Not very often. Around an hour a day. About three miles twice a week.
3. A: And how well do you swim? B:	
I'm not very well.	

9 Look at the answers. Write questions using how.

 I almost never do. ■ I'm about average.

Aem	i các cấu tra lới. Việt các cấu hồi, sử dụng how	
1. A	: How much time do you spend exercising	?
В	B: I don't spend much time at all. In fact, I don't ever exercise. But I watch a lot of sports on TV.	
2. A		for a walk?
В	3: Almost every day, I really enjoy it.	
3. A		?
	E. I spend about an hour jogging.	
4. A		at racquetball?
	3: I'm pretty good at it. I'm on the school team.	-
5. A		?
	3: Basketball? Pretty well I guess I like it a lot	

10

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence, using the words given.

Việt lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, dùng các từ được cho sắn

	•
1. I don't watch TV very much.	
1 seldorn watch TV.	(seldom)
2. Tom exercises twice a month.	
	(not very often)
3. Philip tries to keep fit.	
	(stay in shape)
4. Jill often exercises at the gym.	
	(work out)
5. How long do you spend at the gym?	
	(time)
6. How good are you at tennis?	
	(play)

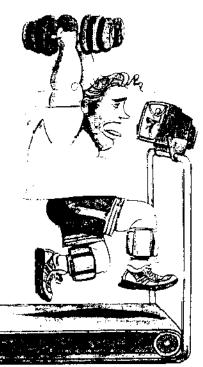
11

What do you think about sports? Answer these questions.

Ban nghi gi về thể thao? Trá lời các câu hói sau

- Do you like to exercise for a short time or a long time?

 Do you prefer exercising in the morning or in the evening?
- 3. Which do you like better, walking or jogging?
- 4 Which do you like better, team sports or individual sports?
- 5. How good are you at games like basketball or tennis?
- 6. Do you prefer fitness freaks or couch potatoes?



I only exercise for a short time.



We had a great time!

1	cookcook	ad			
			4. love		7. visit
	enjoy		5. study		8. wash
3.	invite		6. try		9. watch
В	Write the simple	form of these	e irregular past te	nse verbs.	
1.	ьиу	bought	5	slent	
				-	
	Wan ad Lhas				
4.	galiqqorfs og	saw	7 8	COOK	
	The second secon			went	
2.	Use two of the ve	erbs above an	ad write sentences ast night.	about the past.	
2. 3.	Use two of the ve	erbs above an	ad write sentences ast night. questions. Düng	about the past.	to sắn để trá lời các câu hỏi s
2. 3.	Use two of the ve We went to a ro	erbs above an	ad write sentences ast night. questions. Düng	about the past.	to sẫn để trả lời các câu hỏi s
2. 3.	Use two of the ve We went to a ro see the cues to an Where did you go I went to a party	erbs above and ck concert lo	ad write sentences ast night. questions. Dûn, d?	about the past.	to sắn để trá lời các câu hỏi s
2. 3.	Use two of the ve We went to a ro	erbs above and ck concert lo	questions. Dùn	about the past.	to sắn để trả lời các câu hỏi s (to a party)
2. 3. 1. 2.	Use two of the ve We went to a ro see the cues to an Where did you go I went to a party	erbs above and ck concert looswer these this weekend at the party	questions. Dung	about the past.	to sắn để trả lời các câu hỏi s (to a party) (someone very interesting
2. 3. 1. 2. 3.	We went to a ro See the cues to an Where did you go I went to a party Who did you meet What time did you	erbs above and ck concert looks were these this weekens at the party and Eva ge	questions. Dunad?	about the past.	to sắn để trả lời các câu hỏi s (to a party)
2. 3. 1. 2. 3.	Use two of the ve We went to a ro see the cues to an Where did you go I went to a party Who did you meet	erbs above and ck concert looks were these this weekens at the party and Eva ge	questions. Dunad?	about the past.	(to a party) (someone very interesting (a little after 1:00)
2. 3. 1. 2. 3. 4.	We went to a ro See the cues to an Where did you go I went to a party Who did you meet What time did you	erbs above and ck concert looks were these this weekend at the party and Eva ge	questions. Dunad?	about the past.	to sắn để trả lời các câu hỏi s (to a party) (someone very interesting

What do you like to do alone? What do you like to do with other people?
Complete the chart with activities from the list.
Then add one more activity to each list.

Bạn thích làm việc gì một mình? Bạn thích làm việc gì với các người khác? Hoàn chỉnh băng bằng các hoạt động từ băng kê. Rồi thêm một hoạt động nữa vào mỗi báng kê



Things I like to do ald	one	Things I like to do with other people
	ansq ada	noda sercamas africe bus azonie some p

read the newspaper
go shopping
do housework
exercise
have a picnic
go to a sports event
cook dinner
take a vacation
watch TV
see a movie

4	Complete the questions in this conversation.	Hoàn chỉnh các câu hỏi trong bài đàm thoại sa
---	--	---

A: How did you spend your weekend?	2 X319/L N N LEUR L
B: I spent the weekend with Joe and Kathy	
B: Well, on Saturday, we went shopping.	
A: And did	in the evening
B: No, nothing special.	
A: Where	on Sunday?
B: We went to the amusement park.	
A: How	C Viscon did 4sH and Javen go on vacquing
B: We had a great time. In fact, we stayed	there all day.
A: Really? What time	\.

B: We got home very late, around midnight.

∘5

Answer these questions with negative statements. Then add a positive statement using the information below.

Trá lời các cấu hỏi sau bằng câu phủ định. Rồi thêm vào một câu xác định. Dùng thông ti α dưới đấy

Grammar note: Past tense negative statements	
I didn't cook dinner last night. We didn't have a good time.	
 ✓ have a boring time ☐ finish our homework on Saturday ☐ go out with fri ☐ watch it on TV ☐ work all day until six o'clock ☐ take the bus 	iends
B. No, we didn't enjoy it. We had a boring time.	
2. A: I stayed home from work yesterday. Did you take the day off, too? B:	
B:B. A: I slept in all weekend. Did you spend the weekend at home?	
A: I studied all weekend. Did you and John have a lot of homework, too?	
B:	
6. A: Kathy went to the baseball game last night. Did you and Bob go to the game?	
B:	

Read about Andy's week. Match the sentences that have the same meaning.

Đọc về tuần của Andy. Xếp các cấu có cũng nghĩa với nhau

A	2
1. He was broke last week. \underline{f}	a. He had people over.
2. He didn't work on Friday.	b. He had a good time.
3. He worked around the house.	c. He didn't do laundry.
4. He didn't wash the clothes.	d. He took a day off.
5. He invited friends for dinner.	e. He did housework.
6. He enjoyed the party.	✓ f. He spent all this money.

Did we take the same trip?

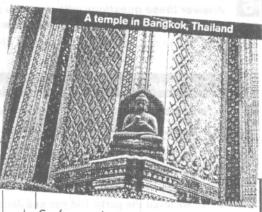
Chuyển đi của chúng ta giống nhau phải không?

A Do you ever take summer vacations? What kind of vacations do you like to take: relaxing? educational? exciting?

B Read these reports about Thailand.

William's report

We went to Thailand for our summer vacation last year. It was our first trip to Asia. We loved it. We spent a week in Bangkok and did something different every day. We went to the floating market very early one morning. We didn't buy anything there, we just looked. Another day, we went to Wat Phra Keo, the famous Temple of the Emerald Buddha. It was really interesting. Then we saw two more temples nearby. We also went on a river trip somewhere outside Bangkok. The best thing about the trip was the food. The next time we have friends over for dinner, I'm going to cook Thai food.



Sue's report

Last summer, we spent our vacation in Thailand. We were very excited — it was our first trip there. We spent two days in Bangkok. Of course, we got a river bus to the floating market. We bought some delicious fruit there. The next day we went to a very interesting temple called the Temple of the Emerald Buddha. We didn't have time to visit any other temples. However, we went to two historic cities — Ayuthaya and Sukhothai. Both have really interesting ruins. Everything was great. It's impossible to say what was the best thing about the trip.

 \boldsymbol{C} Who did these things on their trip? Check (\checkmark) the answers.

	William	Sue	
2. stayed for two days in Bangkok 3. visited the floating market 4. bought food in Bangkok 5. saw some historic ruins 6. took a trip on the river	000000	000000	

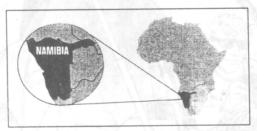
8	Complete this conversation with was, wasn't, were, or weren't.
	Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoai sau với was, wasn't, were hoặc weren't

A:	How was	your vacation in Peru,	Julia?
B:	It	great. I really enjoyed it.	
A:	How long	you there?	
		there for two weeks.	
A:		you in Lima all the time?	
B:	No, we	. We in th	ne mountains
	for a few days.		
		the weather?	it good?
B:	No, it	good at all. The city	i liy nghi cua t
	very hot, and t	he mountains	really cold!



9 Choose the correct questions to complete this conversation.

Chọn các câu hỏi thích hợp để hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại sau



□ And how did you like it?
□ How long were you in South Africa?
☑ How was your vacation in Africa?
□ And how long were you in Namibia?
□ How was the weather?

we saw some meerkats!



A:	How was your vacation in Africa?	ann van about
B:	It was a great trip. I really enjoyed Sou	
A:		ad on vacation?
B:	For ten days.	
A:		1 Tillian og
B:	I was in Namibia for about five days.	
A:	Wow, that's a long time.	, og v;
B:	It was hot and sunny the whole time.	
		con vacation?
	Oh, it was wonderful. And the wildlife	was terrific –

10	Choose the correct words or phrases. Chọn các từ hoặc cụm từ thích hợp
	1. The neighbors had a party till 3:00 A.M.
	We complained about it. (noisy/fun/birthday)
	2. We didn't see very much in the mountains. The weather was
	. (cool/rainy/foggy)
	3. We went on a of the ruins. (tour/trip/vacation)
	4. I worked very hard in Switzerland. I was there
	(on business/in my car/on vacation)
111	My kind of vacation Loại kỳ nghi của tôi
	A What do you like to do on vacation? Rank the
	what do you like to do on vacation? Rank the activities below from 1 (you like it the moto 6 (you like it the least).
	go to the beach
	look at ruins
	go shopping
	visit museums
	spend time at home
	have good food
	00
	B Answer the questions about your vacations.
	1. How often do you go on vacation?
	2. How long do you spend on vacation?
	3. Who do you usually go with?
	4. Where do you usually go?
	some allowards various transfers of all
	5. What do you usually do on vacation?
	8. Ob, a was yonderna. And the valatile was terribe ~



How do you like the neighborhood?

Bạn có thích khu láng giềng này không?

Places Noi chiốn

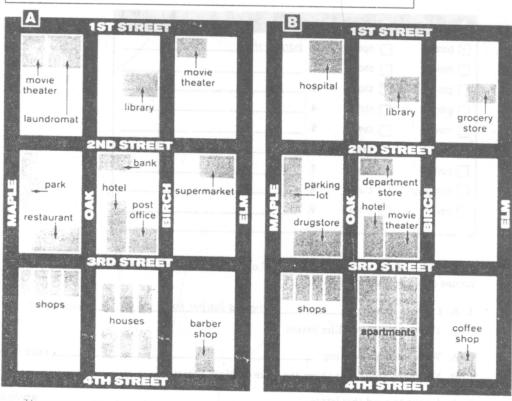
A Match the words in columns A and B. Write the names of the places.

A	В	\$	
□ barber	gency	1. barber shop	
☐ dance	□ phone	2.	
gos	☐ shop	3.	
grocery	stotion	4	
movie	center	5	
 pov	☐ store	6	
☐ post	theater	7	
shopping	club	8.	
[] travel	office	9	
 B: Yes, the A: We wan B: No, the A: I want B: Yes, the 4. A: I need to 	haircut re's one on Ela it to go dancing re aren't, but t to send this let ere's one next t to make a pho	is there a barber shop	near here? around here?
	id here?	cross from the library.	
			this street?
			_ on this street:
B: No, the	ere aren't, but	there are a couple on Second Avenue.	
6. A: We nee	d to make a r	eservation for a trip near here?	
B: Yes, th	ere's one near	the Sheraton Hotel.	

2 Look at these two street maps. There are ten differences between them. Find the other eight. Write about them as in the examples.

Xem hai bản đồ đường phố sau. Có mười điểm khác biệt giữa hai bản đồ. Tìm tám điểm còn lại. Viết về tám điểm này như trong hai câu ví dụ

Grammar note: There are; some and any Positive statement There are some pay phones near the bank. Negative statement There aren't any pay phones near the bank.



Answer these questions. Use the map and the expressions in the box.

Trả lời các câu hỏi sau. Dùng bản đồ và các cách diễn đạt trong khung

in front of between next to on the corner of opposite

Where's the nearest bank?
 There's one near the grocery store.

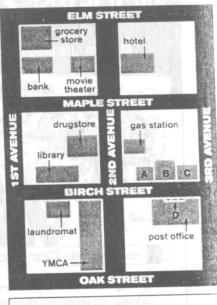
 Is there a post office near here?

3. I'm looking for a drugstore.

4. Is there a laundromat in this neighborhood?

5. Is there a department store on Birch Street?

6. Are there any pay phones around here?



A = travel agency
B = department store
C = gym
D = pay phones

Answer these questions about your city or neighborhood.

Use the expressions in the box and your own information.

Trá lời các câu hỏi sau về thành phố hoặc khu láng giếng của bạn.

Dùng các cách diễn đạt trong khung và thông tin của riêng bạn

Yes, there is. There's one on . . . Yes, there are. There are some on No, there aren't.

1. Are there any good restaurants around school?

2. Is there a police station near school?

3. Are there any good clothing stores in your neighborhood?

The grass is always greener. Cổ lúc nào cũng xanh tươi Vicencia

A Read the interviews.



Modern Life magazine asked two people about their neighborhoods.



Interview with Diana Towne

My neighborhood is very convenient

— it's near the shopping center and the
bus station. It's also safe. But those are the
only good things about living downtown.
It's very noisy — the streets are always full of
people! The traffic is terrible, and parking
is a big problem! I can never park on my
own street. I'd like to live in the suburbs.



Interview with Victor Bord

We live in the suburbs, and it's just too quiet! There aren't many shops, and there are certainly no clubs or theaters. There are a lot of parks, good schools, and very little crime; but nothing ever really happens here. I would really love to live downtown.

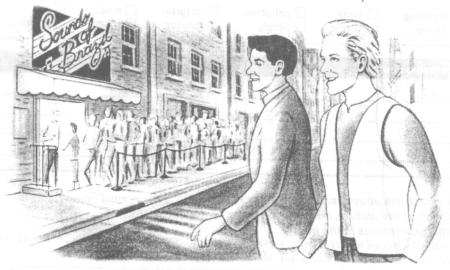
B How do the people feel about their neighborhoods? Complete the chart.

the shopping center	ngdr ,ou No, the
Slo	ere any good restauments around soho
	e a pange straion near school?
	of?

✓ building ☐ bank✓ crime ☐ traffic	☐ pollution ☐ people	☐ hospital ☐ theater	noise school	gas water
Countable nouns		Uncounta	ble nouns	
building		crime	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	
				_
3900				
à viết câu trả lời cho các ☑ a lot □ a couple	a few	only a little	not any	
	(301 A	han/yasi	27.6 07.5	dex: Sure. The
. (noise) How much noi				
2. (buses) 3. (traffic)				ona 11 W sin
4. (banks)				Jese Yyah dec
5. (people)				n e anydd i'
3. (crime)		1/01	Sounds of Bro	teatt/auti
				DI

Choose the correct words or phrases to complete this conversation.

Chọn các từ hoặc cụm từ thích hợp để hoàn chính bài dàm thoại sau



Luis: Are there _____ any ___ (any/one/none) dance clubs around here, Alex?

Alex: Sure. There are	(any/one/a lot).	
There's a great club		(across from/between/on)
the National Bank, but it		
Luis: Well, are there	(any/none/one)	others?
Alex: Yeah, there are		
There's a nice	(any/one/some) r	near here.
It's called Sounds of Braz		
Luis: That's perfect! Where is it	exactly?	
Alex: It's on Third Avenue,	1-1-1-11	_ (between/on/on the corner of
the Royal Theater and Ma		
Luis: So let's go.		
Choose the correct words or	nhrases	A A A
Chọn các từ hoặc cụm từ thic	h hợp	
 I'm going to the stationery sto (birthday cards/coffee/food) 	ore to get some	7
2. We're taking a long drive. We (laundromat/gas station/trav	need to go to the _	A Section of the sect
3. I live on the 8th floor of my _ (apartment building/neighbor	45. Z.	
4. Our apartment is in the cente (downtown/in the neighborho	er of the city. We live	



What does he look like?

Trông anh ấy như thế nào?

] light	d straight	☐ young	□ short	□ tall	
curly / Si	traight		ong/		
			short /		
elderly/					

2 Collocations Kết hợp từ

 ${\bf A}$ Match the words in columns A and B to make descriptions. Write the descriptions.

A	В	
⊡ dark	aged	1. <u>dark brown</u>
tairly [☑ brown	2
good	neight 🔲	3
medium	☐ long	4
☐ middle	looking [5

B Answer the questions using the descriptions from part A.

1.	A:	What does he look like?
	B:	He's good-looking.
2.	A:	How long is his hair?
	B:	
3.	A:	What color is his hair?
	B	
4	A	How old is he?
	В	
5	. A	: How tall is he?



3 Complete the conversation with questions. Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại bằng các câu hỏi



Jim;	What does she look like?	
Steve:	She's quite pretty, with straight black hair.	
	And	
Steve:	It's medium length.	_
Jim:		
Steve:	She's fairly tall.	
Jim:	And	
Steve:	She's in her early twenties.	_
Jim;		
Steve:	Sometimes. I think she's wearing them now.	
Jim:	OK. I think I see her over there.	
		

4	
_	Describe yourself. How old are you? What do you look like? What are you wearing today?
	Tự miều tả. Bạn bao nhiều tuổi? Trong bạn như thế nào! Hồm nay bạn mặc đồ gì?
	trong out that the naos Hom nay ban mặc đổ gi?

4330 34 W	
Ω	
65.500	

Circle two things in each description that do not match the picture. Then correct the information.

Khoanh tròn hai chi tiết trong mỗi phần miêu tả không khớp với hình. Rồi sửa thông tin cho dùng



1. This man is in his ate forties He's pretty tall
He has a black mustache, and he's bald.
He's wearing a dark shirt and jeans.

He isn't in his late forties. He's in his twenties.

2. This woman is about 25. She's very pretty. She's medium height. Her hair is long and blond. She's wearing a black sweater and tennis shoes. She's standing next to her motorcycle.





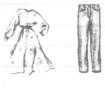
3. This woman is in her early twenties. She's pretty serious looking. She has glasses and straight blond hair. She's fairly tall, and she's wearing a good-looking skirt and blouse. 6 Which clothing items are more formal? Which are more informal or casual?
Use words from the list. Complete the chart.

Các món trang phục nào là trịnh trọng? Các món nào là trang phục bình thường? Dùng các từ từ bảng kê. Hoàn chỉnh bảng sau



	scarf da and all	skirt suit tie
Jeans	1-shirt	cap
jeans	T-shirt	cap





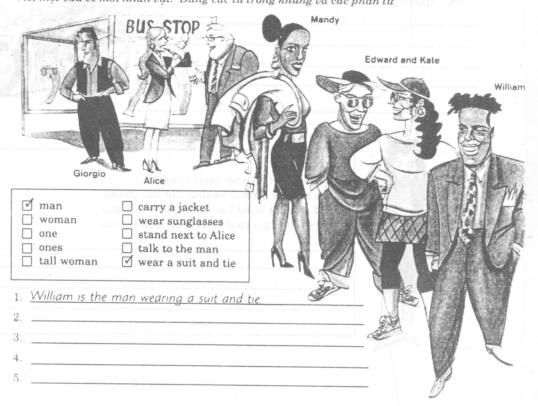


Formal	Casual	
blouse		
		4
		EV.
		2
		-

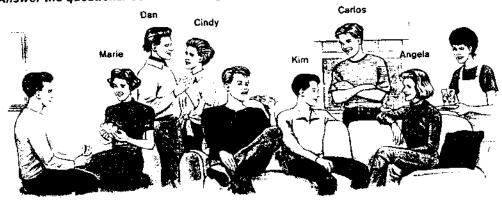


Write a sentence about each person. Use the words in the box and participles.

Viết một câu về mỗi nhân vật. Dùng các từ trong khung và các phân từ



8 Answer the questions. Use the words given. Trá lời các câu hỏi. Dùng các từ được cho sẫn



1	A. \ B: _	Which one is Marie? She's the one in the gray dress.	(gray dress)
		Which one is Carlos?	(couch)
3.	A:	Which ones are Dan and Cindy?	
4.	A:	Which one is Angela?	
	A:	Who's Kim?	

Rewrite these sentences and questions. Find another way to say them using the words given.

Viết lại các câu và câu hỏi sau. Tìm cách khác để nói chúng, dùng các từ được cho sẵn

• •			
1.	A:	Who's Mika? Which one's Mika?	(Which)
	B:	She's the one in the black dress. She's the one wearing the black dress.	(wearing)
2	A.	Which ones are the teachers?	(Who)
	B:	They're the ones on the couch.	(sitting)
3	. A :	Which one is Larry?	(Who)
	В	He's the guy wearing the coat.	(in)

10 Complete this description. Use the present continuous or the participle of the verbs in the box.

Hoàn chỉnh phần miễu tá sau. Dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn hoặc phân từ của các động từ trong khung

□ ask □ carry ☑ look □	stand talk wait walk wear
	Yeah, it's really quiet.
Not	thing ever really happens here
I'm looking	out my window Let's see
There's a good-loo	oking middle-aged woman
her dog, and a young	guy on the phone. Two people
Variabelli de	next to him. Hey! The one a smate! Some people at the
bus step A series	smate! Some people at the
bus sup. A serious-lo	ooking woman for directions
And ney, here com	nes a really cute womana
раскраск	k. Wait a minute! I know her. That's my
DORMITORY	girlfriend. I have to go now! Bye.
DORGATICAL	
	5 STOP
	EPHONE
TEL	- Per
	It shout the one in the black dress
Choose the correct responses.	Secretary the one various the black data.
	Chọn các câu đáp thích hợp
1. A: Where's Jan?	3. A: Is she the one on the couch?
B: She couldn't make it.	B:
I'd like to meet her.	That's right

- She couldn't make it.
- 2. A: Who's Sam?
 - - I'm afraid I missed him.
 - The handsome guy near the door.

- That's right.
- Let's see.
- 4. A: How tall is she?
- Fairly long.
 - Pretty short.



Have you ever ridden a camel?

Bạn đã từng cưỡi lạc đà chưa?

Match the verb forms in columns A and B. Xếp các dạng động từ ở các cột A và B cho thích hợp

1	В
1. be <u>d</u>	a. gone
2. call	b. done
3. do	c. seen
4. eat	✓ d. been
5. go	e. called
6. have	f. jogged
7. jog	g. made
8. make	h. had
9. see	1. tried
10. try	j. eaten

Complete the questions in these conversations. Use the present perfect of the verbs in Exercise 1.

Hoàn chỉnh các cấu hỏi trong các bài đàm thoại sau dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành của các động từ trong bài tập 1

1. A:	Have you seen	the new Keanu Reeves movie?
B:	Yes, it's very good.	the present with the present perfect
B:	Yes, she usually runs in the r	running lately? morning and evening.
3. A:		at the new Brazilian restaurant?
B:	Yes, we've already eaten then	re. It's excellent, but very expensive.
4. A:	: How many times	
	shopping at the mall this mo	onth?
В	: Actually, I haven't gone at al	l. Let's go today! I hear
	there's a new music store the	ere.
5. A	: How many international pho	one calls
В	3: Only one – on my father's bi	rthday.



3 Already and yet Already và yet

f A Check $(\ensuremath{\checkmark})$ the things you've done. Put an $\ensuremath{\times}$ next to the things you haven't done.

- 1. ____ gone in-line skating
- 2. ____ stayed up all night
- 3. ____ been to a jazz club
- 4. ____ had a part-time job
- 5. ____ tried skiing
- 6. ____ gotten married
- 7. ____ made friends in class
- 8. ____ seen a rock concert







B Look at the things you checked and marked **x** in part A. Write sentences about them. Use already and yet.

Grammar note: Already and yet

Already is used in positive statements with the present perfect.
I've already gone in-line skating.

Yet is used in negative statements with the present perfect.
I haven't gone in-line skating yet.

- 1. ready esten there it's expellent but your systems.

- 5.
- 7. Show side

Look at the pictures. How often have you done these things? Write sentences using the expressions in the box.

Xem các tranh. Bạn có thường thực hiện những việc này không? Viết các câu dùng các cách diễn đạt trong khung

I've often

I've . . . three or four times.

I've . . . several times.

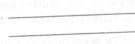
I've . . . once or twice.
I haven't . . . lately.

I've never





1. ______ telephone a property transf



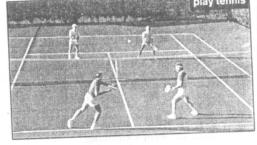




2. -







3 . _____

6	
Ο.	

Horror stories! Chuyện kinh hoàng

- A Have you ever had a terrible day? What happened? What went wrong?
- B Read these stories.



NO WAY UP!

Have you ever been in a cable car? Well, I have. Last February, I went on a ski trip to

Switzerland. What a trip! The first morning, I got into a cable car. I wanted to go to the top of the mountain and ski down. The cable car started up the mountain. I looked down, and it was so beautiful. Then there was a terrible noise. Suddenly the car stopped. It didn't move, and there was quiet everywhere.

It was cold, and it began to get dark and snow. I was alone for one hour, two hours. I thought, "They've forgotten me!" At last the car started back down the mountain. It went very fast. "Sorry," a man said when I climbed out of the car. "We've never had this problem before. Please, try again tomorrow." "He's joking," I thought. "I've had enough of cable cars for a lifetime."

NO WAY OUT!

I have always wanted to go fishing. Last summer, I went on a trip to Taiwan. On the last day of my



vacation, I went fishing on a beautiful lake.

Unfortunately, I didn't catch any fish, and I got bored. I decided to go swimming. When I stood up, my wallet fell out of my pocket and into the water. It had all my money, my passport, my plane tickets – everything. I jumped into the lake to look for it, but I didn't find anything.

The next morning, I wasn't able to leave the hotel. I had no money to pay the bill and no plane ticket or passport to go home. So what did I do? I called my boss and asked for some money. I have never had such a terrible experience.

C In which story or stories did the writer(s) do these things? Write 1. 2. or 1 and 2.

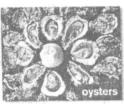
- ____ lost a wallet
 - ___ enjoyed the view
- got no exercise
- _____ spent time on a boat
- ____ waited for help
 - __ went swimming
- _____ had a terrible day

6 Look at the answers. Write questions using Have you ever ...?

Xem các câu trả lời. Viết các câu hỏi, dùng Have you ever...?









А		Have you ever watched flamenco dancing?		
В	:	Yes, I have I watched flamenco dancing last summer in Spain.		
Α		merer		
В	:	Actually, I saw a sumo wrestling match last month on TV. It was ter	rific.	
			nan la	
		No, I haven't. I've never been camping.		
			alieno, a anti-mm	
В	3:	Yes, I have. I ate oysters last year in France.		
. A	١:	Link over personal or my own phone trighteel But you	interest of a contract	
		Yes, I went wall climbing on Friday night.		
			and the state of 	
Е	3:	Yes, I have. My brother once let me ride his motorcycle.		
. Δ	١:		The state of	
E	3:	No, I've never been to India.		
I	B:	Yes, I had a bad dream just last night.		

Write your own answers to the questions in Exercise 6.
Use expressions like the ones from the list.

Yes, I have. I . . . yesterday.

Viết các câu trả lời của riêng bạn cho các câu hỏi ở bài tập 6. Dùng các cách diễn đạt trong băng kê.

No, I haven't. I've never

		I on Monday. I last year. I in August.
comedinespons	er er eta saine er en er	and then
		The many three has to seem the
Trong to training to		pocyT w
Total figure		■ Already.
na boog a dnýved na	A A	What about a tour of the city
	.81	
omit gaal		* Lve never, have you

8 Complete the conversation. Use the past tense or the present perfect of the words given.

thoàn chính bài đảm thoại. Dùng thi quố được cho sắn	i khử hoặc hiện tại hoàn thành của các từ
A: <u>Have</u> you ever <u>lost</u> (lose	a) anything valuable?
B. Yes, I (lose) my watch last	
A: you (find) it y	
B: No. Actually, I already	
A: Oh, that's nice. Where you	(buy) it?
B: I (get) it at the street mark	
you? you ever	
A: Well, I (leave) my address t	
of months ago.	7 3 P 3-1-2 - 40Mp.C
B: How annoying! Maybe that's why you	(not call)
me for a while.	
A: That's right. I can't even remember my ov	vn phone number! But you
(not call) me ir	
B: I told you. I (lose) my watch	
(not have)	the time!
A: Very funny!	
Section 2011	
I haven't had t	he time.
Choose the correct responses. Chọn các	ı dáp thích hợp
A: Has she called her family lately?	
B: No, she hasn't	3. A: How many times has he seen the show?
■ How many times?	B: ■ Twice.
No, she hasn't.	Already.
2. A: Are you having a good time?	4. A: What about a tour of the city?
B: In a long time.	B:
Really good.	I've never, have you?Sure. I hear it's great.

It's a very exciting city!

		Thật là	một thani	pho hap dan
Choose	e the correct words to	complete the sentence	ces.	
Chon c	ác từ thích hợp để hoàr	ı chinh các câu		is a review of the sec
1. Price	es are very high in New Y	York City. Everything is	125 PT 125 M	New York City
prett	y <u>expensive</u>	there.	190	
(chea	ap/expensive/stressful)			
2. My h	nometown is not an excit	ing place. The nightlife		
there	e is pretty		自由社會	TERRIT .
(bori	ing/nice/interesting)			
3. Rom	ne is a beautiful old city.	There are not many		
		ildings. (big/modern/s	small)	Rome, Italy
4 0	ne parts of this city are fa		FARTERS 5	
	y			
		Section of the		
5. Ath	ens is a very quiet city in	n the winter. The street	s are	
nev	er	at that time of the	year.	
(cle	an/crowded/relaxing)			
Chọo	what's the weather lill ls it big? Is the nightlife exciting What's your hometow	oàn chính bài dàm tho ke? ng?	onversation.	
	- guiqquia vii i		107	
B: M	Iy hometown? Oh, it's a p	pretty nice place.		
A: _				
	lo, it's fairly small, and i	t has a lot of beautiful b	ouildings.	
	old houses.	utitasa some beautitu	File time (Care 4 and	
B: T	he winter is wet and too	cold. It's very nice in th	ne summer, thoug	n.
B: N	No! It's really boring afte	r six o'clock in the even	ing.	

Choose the correct conjunctions and rewrite the sentences.

Chọn các liên từ thích hợp và viết lại các câu

Language note: and, but, however, and though

Use and for additional information.

It's an exciting city, and the weather is great.

Use but, however, and though for contrasting information.

It's very safe in the day, but it's pretty dangerous at night.

It is a fairly large city. It's not too interesting, however.

The summers are hot. The evenings are fairly cold, though.







- 1. Paris is a very busy place. The streets are always crowded. (and/but)

 Paris is a very busy place, and the streets are always crowded.
- 2. Prague is a very nice place. The winters are terribly cold. (and/though)
- 3. Sydney is a relaxing city. It has a wonderful harbor. (and/however)
- 4. My hometown is a great place for a vacation. It's not too good for shopping. (and/but)
- 5. Our hometown is fairly ugly and dirty. It has some beautiful old houses. (and/however)

Check (/) if these sentences need a or an. Then write a or an in the correct places. Đánh dấu (v) nếu các câu sau cần a hoặc an. Rồi viết a hoặc an vào chỗ thích hợp

Grammar note: a and an

Use a or an with (adverb +) adjective + singular noun.
It has a fairly new park.
It's an old city.

Don't use a or an with (adverb +) adjective.
It's not very old.
It's dirty.

- 1. Denver has very modern airport.
- 2.

 Restaurants are very cheap in Mexico.
- 3.

 Copenhagen is clean city.
- 4. The buildings in Paris are really beautiful.
- 5. Apartments are very expensive in Hong Kong.
- Amsterdam is fairly crowded city in the summer.
- 7. Toronto has good museums.
- 8. Rio is exciting place to visit.



Complete this description of London with is or has.

	AVEL BRITAIN	
e /	London Britain's biggest city. It a ver	гу
	old capital and dates back to the Romans. It a ci	ty
A	of interesting buildings and churches, and it man	ıy oc in
全	beautiful parks. It also some of the best museum	but
	the world. London very crowded in the summer,	nular
COUNTY -	it not too busy in the winter. It a portion of the city with foreign tourists and more than eight n	nillion
april 1	visitors a year. The city famous for its shopping	and
一般調	many excellent department stores. London	
1977 TO 1	convenient trains and buses that cross the city, so it	
	easy for tourists to get around.	
1 7 7 TO 2 L		
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
	The same of the sa	

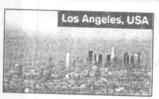
6 From city to city Từ thành phố này đến thành phố kia

A Read about these cities.



For many centuries, Budapest was two cities, with Buda on the west side of the river Danube and Pest on the east side. Budapest became one city in 1872, and it has been the capital city of Hungary for about eighty years.

The population of Budapest is about three million, and the city is a very popular place for tourists. Visitors like to take boat rides along the Danube. Budapest is also known for its exciting nightlife. The best time to visit is the summer since Budapest is very cold in the winter.



Los Angeles was founded in 1781. With 3.5 million people, it is now the biggest city in California. It is famous for its modern freeways, its movie stars, and its smog. When the city is really smoggy, you can't see the nearby mountains. The weather is usually dry and warm. Visitors like to go to the film studios and to drive along Hollywood Boulevard. There are some good beaches near the city, and Los Angeles is also close to Disneyland.





The history of Taipei began in the eighteenth century. It is now the capital city of Taiwan, and it has about 2.3 million people. It is probably the country's most exciting city, but the weather is humid and not very pleasant.

Taipei is a very busy city, and the streets are always full of people. There is an excellent museum that many tourists visit. Taipei is a fairly expensive city, but not more expensive than some neighboring cities such as Hong Kong and Tokyo. So more and more tourists go to Taipei to shop.

B Complete the chart.

City	Date founded	Population	Weather	Tourist attractions
Budapest	1872	3 million		
			in r-11	The same of
os Angeles	d threches and the	as dendshed gains	neč <u>arlo</u>	
Taipei	a viller of the	read on ten W	To v ada	
a logia mati			ha (D)	
	A SA DELLE			

C Complete the sentences.

- 1. Taipei is cheaper than other cities nearby.

 2. has good beaches nearby.

 3. was once two cities.
- 4. _____ are both capital cities.

	s. Use words from the list.		
shouldn't miss	can take shouldn't stay	Museum a	Name of Street, or other Designation of the last of th
	shouldn't walk	Nuseum crry	BUS
to see		Art	
1. You should see	the new zoo.	POPULATION OF THE POPULATION O	
It's very interesting.			B
2. You	near the	OB 3 Ho bothe styl	6407 B
airport. It's too noisy.	the museum	SEL	å
3. You It has some new exhib	the museum.	CITY	740 507
	a bus tour	200	Bus
of the city if you like.		Visit of 8/9	
5. You	alone at	Tions	
night. It's too danger		COME VIOLE	
0. 200	by taxi if	AND SAY HI TO THE	
you're out late.		and the second s	
Complete this conver	sation with should or should	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	linase Lignis et igi
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat What show	noại sau với should hoạc should sion in Indonesia.	dn't and I or you.	ings.
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat What show	noại sau với should hoạc should sion in Indonesia.	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat What show	noại sau với should hoạc should cion in Indonesia. d d do there? miss Jogjakarta,	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city.	noại sau với should hoạc should tion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	ings.
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi	noại sau với should hoạc should tion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	ings.
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi	moai sau với should hoạc should tion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	ings.
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi	moai sau với should hoạc should hoạc should lion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini
Hoàn chính bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi temple of Borobudu A: Sounds great. Bali	moai sau với should hoạc should hoạc should lion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	ings.
Hoàn chính bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi temple of Borobudu A: Sounds great. Bali	moai sau với should hoạc should tion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi temple of Borobudu A: Sounds great. Bali	modi sau với should hoặc should tion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini
Hoàn chính bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi temple of Borobuda A: Sounds great. Bali B: Yes, It's very interestin	modi sau với should hoặc should tion in Indonesia. In	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini
Hoàn chính bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi temple of Borobudu A: Sounds great. Bali B: Yes, It's very interestin A:	moai sau với should hoạc should tion in Indonesia. Indo I do there? Indo I do ther	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini
Hoàn chính bài đàm th A: I'm taking my vacat Whatshou B: the old capital city. beautiful old buildi temple of Borobudu A: Sounds great. Bali B: Yes, It's very interestin A: money with me?	moai sau với should hoạc should tion in Indonesia. Indo I do there? Indo I do ther	dn't and I or you. ln't và I hoặc you	sings. et ini

go there?

B: Well, it's always hot and humid, so it really doesn't matter.

سدخا	

Ask questions about a place you want to visit. Use can, should, or shouldn't. Ask about:

Đặt các cầu hói về nơi bạn muốn tham quan. Dùng can, should hoặc shouldn't hói về:

1	And Andre Dung Can, should hoar shouldn't
L.	the time to visit
	What time of year should you visit?
2.	things to see and do there
3.	things people shouldn't do
4.	special foods
5.	things to buy
6.	other interesting things

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence

Viết lại các vâu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, dùng các từ được cho sẵn



1	. It's a stressful city.	
	It isn't a relaxing city.	
2.	The streets are always full of people.	(not relaxing)
3.	It's not a very beautiful city.	(crowded)
4.	When should we visit the city?	(fairly ugly)
5.	You really should see the flea markets.	(a good time)
6.	What can we do there?	(not miss)
		(should)

12 It really works!

1 Any suggestions? Có để nghị nào không?

Nó thật sự công hiệu!

1. a backache ☑ use a heating pad ☐ get some exercise ☐ take some vitamin C ☐ take some aspirin ☐ take some good advice ☐ take some good advice ☐ take some good	
4. an insect bite put anti-itch cream on it drink lots of hot water take some aspirin take some cold medicine chop up some garlic	
B Write a question about each problem in part A. Then write answers using the words from the list. Use the ideas in part A or your own suggestions in your answers. It's important It's helpful It's a good idea, It's useful	
1. A: What should you do for a backache? B: It's helpful to use a heating pad. 2. A:	
B:	
4. A:	

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to give advice using It's a good idea . . . , It's helpful . . . , or It's important

Viết lại các câu sau. Tim cách khác để cho lời khuyên. Dùng it's a good idea..., it's helpful..., hoặc it's important...

	tise a lot. For the flu, it's a good idea not to ex	ercise a lot.
1. For a bad cough, don't	t smoke.	
For a bad cough, it's	s important riot to smoke.	****
2. For a sore throat, don	o't talk too much.	
3. For a burn, don't put	ice on it.	
4. For insomnia, don't d		
5. For a fever, don't get	out of bed.	
mỗi chứng, Dùng các c	g bệnh mà bạn mắc phai trong năm r ách chừa trị dưới đây hoặc cách chừ	
Health problems a backache a headache a toothache a cold a sore throat the hiccups a sunburn stress Some remedies take some aspirin use some lotion take some cough drops	get some medicine from the drugste put some ointment on it see my doctor/dentist	ore
□ a backache □ a headache □ a toothache □ a cold □ a sore throat □ the hiccups □ a sunburn □ stress Some remedies take some aspirin use some lotion	put some ointment on it	pre
□ a backache □ a headache □ a toothache □ a cold □ a sore throat □ the hiccups □ a sunburn □ stress Some remedies take some aspirin use some lotion take some cough drops go to bed	put some ointment on it see my doctor/dentist	·

4 Getting to sleep Ngu

A How many hours do you sleep each night? Do you ever have difficulty getting to sleep? What do you do? Read the article.





Ost people need seven to eight hours of sleep a night. Some people need less than this, and some people need more.

According to sleep expert Dr. Robert Schachter, many people have difficulty sleeping, but they do not know why. Most people know it is important not to drink coffee or tea before they go to bed —

both beverages have caffeine. Caffeine keeps people awake. However, not everybody knows that some medicines, such as cold tablets, also have caffeine in them. Stress can cause insomnia, too. Busy people with stressful jobs may not be able to sleep at night.

Dr. Schachter suggests, "You shouldn't use your bedroom as a TV room or an exercise room. You should use it for sleeping only. It's a good idea to have a regular sleeping schedule. Get up and go to bed at the same time every day. It's also important not to eat before bedtime. Eating may keep you awake."

And if all this doesn't work, try counting sheep!

B Check (1) True or False.

	True	False
Everyone needs eight hours of sleep a night.		
2. Caffeine helps you fall asleep.		
3. Cold tablets can keep you awake.		
4. Busy people may have trouble falling asleep		
5. It is a good idea to have a TV near your bed.		
6. You should have regular sleeping hours.		
7. You shouldn't eat just before you go to bed.		
8. Counting sheep may help.		

□ cough drops ☑ eye drops	ointment sunburn spray	cream	☐ pills ☐ tissues	
Bottle		Box		
eye drops	_	$\sqrt{}$		
	Contair	iers		
Can		Tube		
B What should th	nese people buy? Give a	idvice. Use the	7	
containers and me	edicine from part A.			
1. Joe has very tir				
<u>He should buy</u>	a bottle of eye drops		 (3	The same
			141	A) DRIVEN VA ZA

Check (/) the correct sentences to make conversations.

Đảnh đấu (v) các câu trả lời thích hợp để tạo ra bài đàm thoại



	☐ Should I help you?
Customer:	☐ Yes. Can I have a package of bandages?☐ Yes. I suggest a package of bandages.
Pharmacist:	Here you are.
Customer:	☐ And what do you need for a sunburn? ☐ And what do you have for a sunburn?
Pharmacist:	□ Do you suggest this lotion?□ I suggest this lotion.
Customer:	Thanks.
2. Pharmacist:	Hi. Can I help you?
Customer:	☐ Yes. Can I suggest something for sore muscles?☐ Yes. Could I have something for sore muscles?
Pharmacist:	☐ Sure. Try this ointment. ☐ Sure. Could I try this ointment?
Customer:	☐ Thanks. And what should you get for the flu?☐ Thanks. And what do you suggest for the flu?
Pharmacist:	☐ Can I have some of these tablets? They really work.☐ Try some of these tablets. They really work.
Customer:	☐ OK, thanks. I'll take them. And you should get a box of tissues. ☐ OK, thanks. I'll take them. And could I have a box of tissues?
Pharmacist:	Sure Here you are

Complete this conversation with the correct words. Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại sau với các từ thích hợp A: Wow, you don't look very good! Do you feel OK? B: No, I think I'm getting a cold. What should I do _ (for/to/with) A: You should stay _____ home and go ___ __ bed. (at/in/of) (in/of/to) B: You're probably right. I've got a really bad cough, too. A: Try drinking some hot tea _ honey. It really helps. (for/of/with) B: Anything else? A: Yeah, I suggest you get a big box (at/in/of)

Give suggestions for these problems. Use words from the box.

Nếu để nghị cho các chứng bệnh sau. Dùng các từ từ khung

I suggest	You should	Try	sdead?	
I have a very so Try some hot to		t genether, for genether, for t	P. Can I neip you! [7 Year Canal Suggest [7 Year Canal I have	
2. I think I'm getti	ng a cold.	entent. this olutiones:T	of Succeeding the property	
	t for the Su?	st poy blancis n	[] Thanks And wha	211
3. I have a backach	ne. And don't tell me	to go to bed!		
4. I have a terrible			Try some A these	-

May I take your order, please?

Ông gọi món gì ạ?

Show that you agree. Write sentences with the words given.

Cho thấy bạn đồng ý. Viết các câu với các từ được cho sắn



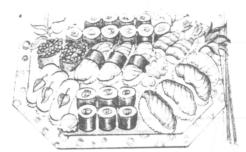
I don't want fast food tonight.



I really like healthy foods.

1. I don't either. (either)





I'm in the mood for Japanese food.



I don't like spicy food.

3. (too)



I don't like bland food very much.



I think Italian food is delicious.

(either)

6. _____ (too)

(neither)

What do you think? Ban nghĩ gi?

A Look at the pictures. Write sentences about the food.
Use the expressions in the box.

Useful expressions I like ... a lot ... I don't like ... very much. I love ... I'm not crazy about ... It's a bit too ... It's a bit too ...

		greasy
		11/1
100	No GLA	healthy

1. It's a bit too greasy.



2. uriginat bool feet may finos i



3.



4.



5.



6. _____

В	List	your	two	favorite	kinds	of	food
B	List	your	two	favorite	kinds	of	food

3 Which restaurant?

Nhà hàng nào?

A What kinds of restaurants do you like? Do you prefer a quiet place or a noisy place?

B Read these restaurant reviews.

Trattoria Romana



Trattoria Romana is an excellent Italian restaurant. It has a quiet and relaxing atmosphere, and the service is very good. It's always crowded, so make a reservation early. The menu is not very big. There are only four entrees on the menu, but everything is fresh. The chicken with pasta is wonderful. Desserts are their specialty - rich and delicious! It's a little expensive but very good. You'll spend about \$25 per person.



Last Saturday, I was the only customer at Dynasty, a new diner on 57th Street. It's not a good place to go. The waiters are slow and unfriendly. The atmosphere is boring, and so is the menu. It specializes in American food - mostly steak and potatoes; but my steak was raw, and the fries were greasy. It isn't cheap, either. It cost me \$22. If you go to Dynasty, you certainly won't need a reservation. My advice, however, is "Don't Go."

Beirut cafe



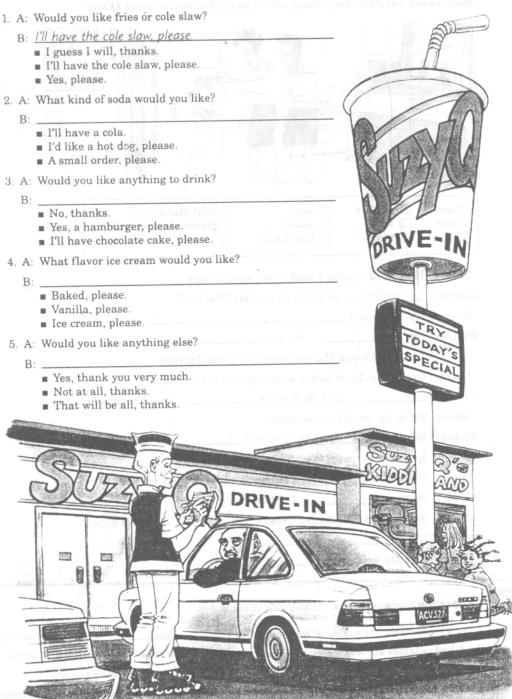
Beirut Cafe is a great new Lebanese restaurant. The specialty is mere - lots of different small dishes, some with meat or fish, others with vegetables. The atmosphere is lively, and the service is very friendly. There's live Lebanese music and dancing on weekends. Beirut Cafe is surprisingly inexpensive about \$18 a person, but you need to make a reservation.

C Complete the chart.

	Trattoria Romana	Dynasty	Beirut Cafe
Foodi	<u>Italian</u>		
Almosphere	quiet and relaxing		
Specialties			
Service			
Price/person			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Reservation	□ yes □ no	🗌 yes 🔲 no	☐ yes ☐ no

□ beef □ cake □ chicken	☐ clam ☐ coffee ☐ ice	☐ milk ☐ mixed	onion pasta	☑ salmon □ sandwich	
- June wen		noodle	□ pie	□ tea	
*	+ 2	Cate	18	Siner	. 44
(includes	Main Dish	LS * c of potatoes	.)	*Sala	ðs *
	almon				_
					sala
turkey					sala
-	_				gree
	* Soups *	۲	,	. * Dess	erts *
chicken	•				
- · · · -			•		
				e	-
<u> </u>		chowde	er	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	crear
		*Be	revages *		
				•	<u> </u>
				L	
Ise one or moi	e words to co	mplete this i	CONVARSATION	hatuman	
waiter and a	customer.				
			àm thoại sai	ı giữa tiếp viêr	ı và khách hàng
	I take your orde				
ustomer: <u>Yes, 1</u>	Il have	the roast bee	f with mashe	d potatoes.	6
waiter: What	kind of dressin ur salad – Fren	g	rrimai 9		
on yo			vinaigrette		
	II,				17/18/2017
ustomer: Frenc				و باساسان	
ustomer: Frenc	vould you like		t	o drink?	Vates

6 Choose the correct responses. Chọn các câu đáp thích hợp a vào sais alatomos



Complete the conversation. Use the words and expressions in the box.

Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại. Dùng các từ và cách diễn đạt trong khung

	-		
			The state of the s
□ am 🏳 neither	□ will	Conn't atom debana	

□ am ☑ neither □ will □ can't stand them □ can □ so □ would □ favorite kind of food □ do □ too □ like it a lot □
Sherry: I feel tired tonight. I really don't want to cook. Whitney: Neither do I. Say, do you like Thai food? Sherry: It's delicious. I
Whitney: I do, It's my Let's call Chiang Mai restaurant for home delivery.
Sherry: Great idea! Their food is always good. I eat there a lot. Whitney: do I. Well, what you like tonight?
Sherry: I'm in the mood for some soup. Whitney: So I. And I think I have spicy chicken and special Thai rice.
Sherry: OK, let's order. Oh, wait a minute, I don't have any money. Whitney: Neither I. What should we do?
Sherry: Well, let's look in the refrigerator. Hmm. Do you like boiled eggs? Whitney: I
Choose the correct words. Chon các từ thich hợp
1. In a restaurant, the waiter or waitress takes yourorder (menu/order/services)

	one to the map
1.	In a restaurant, the waiter or waitress takes your (menu/order/service)
2.	Baked potatoes are less than french fries. (greasy/nealthy/spicy)
3.	Many people like on their salad. (dessert/dressing/soda)
	Some people rarely cook with spices. They prefer food. (bland/hot/rich)
5.	Vanilla is a popular ice cream (drink/flavor/meal)



The biggest and the best!

Lớn nhất và tốt nhất

Geography Địa lý

A	Circle the correct word.
	This is an area of land between two rows of mountains or cliffs, usually with a river running through. a canyon b. plain c. waterfall
2.	This is a large area of land that has lots of trees on it. a. cliff b. forest c. valley
3.	This is an area of land that is always wet. a. canyon b. plain c. swamp
4.	This is an area of water with land all around it. a. lake b. ocean c. swamp
5.	This is a mountain with a hole at the top. Smoke and lava sometimes come from the hole, and it can be dangerous. a. hill b. plateau c. volcano
6.	This is a dry, sandy place. It doesn't rain much here, and there aren't many plants. a. desert b. sea c. volcano
В	Complete the names. Use words from the box.
	☐ Canyon ☐ Falls ☐ Ocean ☐ Lake ☐ Desert ☐ Mount ☐ River ☐ Sea
1	Grand Canyon
2	. Amazon
3	Superior
4	Fuji
5	. Mediterranean
6	Niagara
7	. Pacific
8	. Sahara
	The second se

2 Write the comparative and superlative of the words given.

Spelling note: Comparatives and	superlative	s	
Add -er or -est to most words: Add -r or -est to words ending in -e: Drop y and odd -let or -lest: Double the final consonant and add -er or -est:	Adjective long large dry big	Comparative longer lorger drier bigger	Superlative the longest the lorgest the driest the biggest

l. busy	busier	the busiest	6. noisy	
2. cool			7. old	
3. friendly			8. safe	
4. heavy			9. small	
5. nice			10. wet	

Complete this conversation. Use the superlative of the words given.

Ian: So where did you go for your vacation, Val?

Val: Italy.

Ian: How exciting! Did you have a good time?

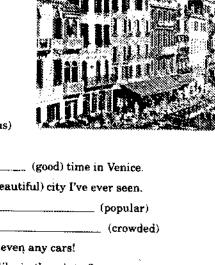
Val: It was terrific! I think Italy is the most exciting (exciting)

country in Europe.

Val: Yeah. I had _

Ian: Well, it certainly has some of

-	•			
				(famous)
cities in	the world - Ro	me, Mil	an, Ver	nice.



's	(beautiful) city I've ever seen.		
f course, it's also one of	(popular)		
ty I visited this summer, and there we			
ve always wanted to visit Venice. What	's it like in the winter?		
ctually, that's	(bad) time to visit.		
	(cold and foggy)		
aces in Italy in the winter.	331		
f t c	course, it's also one of urist attractions. It was y I visited this summer, and there were always wanted to visit Venice. What tually, that's nice is one of		

Did you know? Complete these sentences. Use the comparative or the superlative of the words given.

Bạn có biết? Hoàn chỉnh các câu sau. Dùng dạng so sánh tương đối hoặc tuyệt đối của các từ được cho sẵn



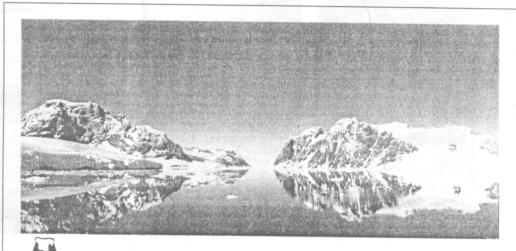




	Canada and Russia are the largest (large) countries in the world.
2.	Russia is larger than (large) Canada.
3.	(high) waterfall in the world is in Venezuela.
4.	The Suez Canal joins the Mediterranean and Red seas. It is 190 kilometers (118 miles)
	long. It is (long) the Panama Canal.
5.	The Atacama Desert in Chile is (dry) place in the world.
	Mount Waialeale in Hawaii gets 1,170 centimeters (460 inches) of rain a year.
	It is (wet) place on earth!
7.	(hot) capital city in the world is Muscat, in Oman.
	The continent of Antarctica is (cold) any other place in the world.
9.	The Himalayas are some of (dangerous) mountains to climb.
10.	Badwater, in California's Death Valley, is (low) point in North America.
11.	Mont Blanc in the French Alps is (high) the Matterhorn in the Swiss Alps.
12.	The Pacific Ocean is (deep) the Atlantic Ocean.

In some places the Pacific Ocean is 11,033 meters (36,198 feet) deep.

- The coldest and the windiest! Lạnh nhất và nhiều gió nhất
 - A Where is the coldest place you've ever been?
 - B Read about Antarctica.



Is the most southern continent in the world. It is like nowhere else on earth. It is much larger than Europe, and nearly twice the size of Australia. It is an icy plateau with the South Pole at its center. Antarctica is the coldest and windiest place in the world, even colder and windier than the North Pole. In the summer, the sun shines for twenty-four hours a day, but in the winter it's completely dark for about three months. Very few plants grow there, but there is some wildlife, including whales, seals, and penguins.

When Captain James Cook sailed around the continent in the 1770s, he found no one living there. Today, a few scientists work in Antarctica, but they only spend fairly short periods there. Many scientists in Antarctica are studying the ozone layer. The ozone layer is getting thinner and thinner worldwide. The biggest "hole" is over Antarctica, where the weather is getting warmer. Scientists think that this cold and lonely place can teach us a lot about the earth and how to keep it safe.



C Check (✓) True or False.

1. Europe is bigger than Antarctica.
2. The North Pole is the coldest and windiest place in the world.
3. In Antarctica, it never gets dark in the summer.
4. There are a lot of animals and birds in Antarctica.
5. Captain Cook found a few scientists living in Antarctica.
6. The weather in Antarctica is getting colder and colder.

Geography quiz Đố vui về địa lý

Use the words in the box. Write questions about the pictures. Then circle the correct answers.

- ☐ How big ☐ How cold
- ☐ How deep
- ☐ How long ☐ How far ☑ How high



1. How high is Angel Falls?

- a. It's 979 meters (3,212 feet) tall.
- (b) It's 979 meters high.

Australia to New Zealand

a. It's about 2,000 kilometers (12,000 miles).

b. It's about 2,000 square kilometers.

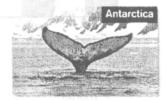




- a. It's 6,437 kilometers (4,000 miles) long.
- b. It's 6,437 kilometers high.



- a. It gets up to -88.3 degrees Celsius (-126.9 degrees Fahrenheit).
- b. It gets down to -88.3 degrees Celsius.





- a. It's 6 million square kilometers (21/2 million miles).
 - b. It's 6 million kilometers long.



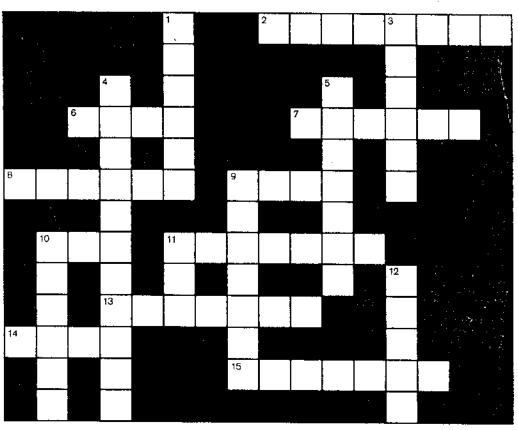
- a. It's about 1.6 kilometers (1 mile) big.
- b. It's about 1.6 kilometers deep.





Write the opposites.

Viết các từ phần nghĩa



Across

- 2 biggest
- 6 bad
- 7 shorter
- 8 worse
- 9 worst
- 10 near
- 11 lowest
- 13 driest
- 14 hot
- 15 shortest

Down

- 1 hotter
- 3 smaller
- 4 least crowded (2 words)
- 5 coldest
- 9 smallest
- 10 not famous
- 11 cold
- 12 best



15 I'm going to see a musical.

□ an amusei ☑ a beach pa		□ a ballgar] a museum] a play	□ a rock c □ a video	oncert
have		6 66 :	visi	:	watch	
a beach pa	ırt <u>y</u>					
<u> </u>	<u> </u>		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
	·····	··				
			her plans. Use	•		-
Đọc nhạt ky	cua Anna, va	viet ve cac	dự định của có	o. Dùng thi h	iện tại tiếp die	en
		•	July	7		
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday			Friday	Satur
6	7 work overtime	8 1700 em	9 night – watch	10 12:00 noon	11 stay home	12 afternoor
mornina -			TOTAL PROPERTY	12.00 10011	stuy nome	
morning — visit	to finish the	see a play	the hockey	have a	and watch the	go to an
•		see a play with Tony	the hockey game with Kate & Sam	have a barbecue	and watch the late show on TV	go to an arts festin
visit Forest Green	to finish the		game with		late show on	1~
visit Forest Green Historic Park	to finish the report	with Tony	game with Kate & Sam	barbecue	late show on	1~
visit Forest Green Historic Park 1. <u>On Sund</u> i	to finish the report	with Tony	game with	barbecue	late show on	1~
visit Forest Green Historic Park	to finish the report	with Tony	game with Kate & Sam	barbecue	late show on	1~
visit Forest Green Historic Park 1. <u>On Sund</u> 2.	to finish the report	with Tony unna is visitir	game with Kate & Sam ng Forest Green	Historic Par	late show on	1~
visit Forest Green Historic Park 1. <u>On Sund</u> i	to finish the report	with Tony unna is visitir	game with Kate & Sam	Historic Par	late show on	1~
visit Forest Green Historic Park 1. On Sunda 2.	to finish the report	with Tony	game with Kate & Sam Ig Forest Green	Historic Par	late show on	1~
visit Forest Green Historic Park 1. On Sunda 2.	to finish the report	with Tony	game with Kate & Sam Ig Forest Green	Historic Par	late show on	1~

	going to and the verbs given. be going to cả các động từ được cho sẵn
Marta: Whatgre yougoing	
Mark: I	
Marta: That sounds interesting.	to all art gailery on Saturday. (go)
ū	
Mark: Yeah. There's a new exhibit at th	
Marta: Well, Brian and I in the afternoon. (see)	a ballgame
Mark: And what you	in the evening? (do)
Marta: Brian	his mother in the hospital. (visit)
But I not	anything really. (do)
Mark: Well, I	some friends over
for a barbecue. Would you like to	come? (have)
Marta: Thanks, I'd love to.	
1. A: Would you like to go to a movie on	
 1. A: Would you like to go to a movie on B: Oh, I'm sorry. I can't. Oh, I'm sorry. 1 can't. 	· ·
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special.	· ·
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't.	· ·
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special.	
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B:	r with us tomorrow?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B: Yes, I'm going to.	r with us tomorrow?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B:	r with us tomorrow?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. A: Do you want to visit the street fair B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show?	r with us tomorrow?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. 2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show? Sure, I'd love to. 3. A: We're having friends over for dinn. B:	r with us tomorrow?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. 2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show? Sure, I'd love to. 3. A: We're having friends over for dinn. B: How about this evening?	r with us tomorrow?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. 2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show? Sure, I'd love to. 3. A: We're having friends over for dinn. B: How about this evening? I'm working late tonight. I'm sor	r with us tomorrow?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. 2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show? Sure, I'd love to. 3. A: We're having friends over for dinn. B: How about this evening? I'm working late tonight. I'm sor. Yes, it would.	r with us tomorrow? her tonight. Would you like to come?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. 2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show? Sure, I'd love to. 3. A: We're having friends over for dinn B: How about this evening? I'm working late tonight. I'm sor Yes, it would. 4. A: How about dinner at the Mexican	r with us tomorrow? her tonight. Would you like to come?
B: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. 2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair. B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show? Sure, I'd love to. 3. A: We're having friends over for dinn. B: How about this evening? I'm working late tonight. I'm sor. Yes, it would. 4. A: How about dinner at the Mexican. B:	r with us tomorrow? her tonight. Would you like to come?
B: Oh, I'm sorry. I can't. Oh, I'm sorry. I can't. Nothing special. No. I wouldn't. 2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair B: Yes, I'm going to. Can we go to a late show? Sure, I'd love to. 3. A: We're having friends over for dinn B: How about this evening? I'm working late tonight. I'm sor Yes, it would. 4. A: How about dinner at the Mexican	r with us tomorrow? Her tonight. Would you like to come? Try. restaurant tonight?

Write invitations to this week's events in Princeville.

Viết các lời mời tham dự các sự kiện trong tuần này ở Princeville

citing things to do thi	s week in Princeville	All events scheduled	to begin at 8:00 P.M.
Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
Rock concert The Cranberries	Amusement park Lots to do for everyone!	Play Funny Money	Museum Exhibition of modern art

1	Are you doing anything on Wednesday evening? Do you want to see a rock concert?
	or I'm going to see the Cranberries on Wednesday. Would you like to come?
2.	Ed Cal unum telephone.com
3.	alles and de enter acceptales and beau ylan algorin age gual as sold
J.	Move thanks to computers, people use their phones to do much more
4.	They can bank by phone, rent videos by phone, and even shop by phone it is also possible to send letters and reports by texing them over
	The Control of the Control of the Paralle of the Paralle of the Control of the Co

Write about how often you do these leisure activities.

Use the expressions in the box.

Viết về mức độ thường xuyên mà bạn thực hiện các hoạt động giải trí này. Dùng các cách diễn đạt trong khung

I often

I . . . almost every weekend.

I sometimes . . . in the summer.

I... three or four times a year.

I never

1. I never go to rock concerts.
2.

4. Later deposits to and page 4 a / graft . A Alexand .

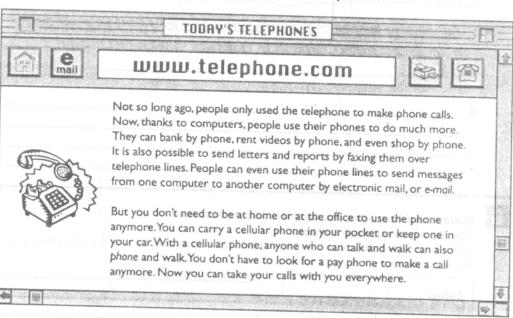
5. ___



7	Beyond the telephone	Không chỉ là diện thoại	
		control is a few control of the cont	

A Why do you use the telephone? List some reasons.

B Read the passage. Are the reasons different from the ones in your list?



C Check (✓) True or False. For statements that are false, write the true information.

	True	False
You can pay for things by phone.		
2. Fax machines do not use telephone lines.		
3. You need a computer and a telephone line to send e-mail.		
4. You can use a cellular phone at home or at work.		
5. You need a car to make a call on a cellular phone.		
THE RESIDENCE OF THE REPRESENTATION OF THE PARTY OF THE P	The state of the s	

Read these messages. What did the caller say? Write the messages another way using tell or ask.

	For:
	Message:
1	

Ms. Tam .

The meeting is at 10:30 tomorrow morning. Bring the last fax from New York.

1. Please tell Ms. Tam that the meeting is at 10:30 tomorrow morning.

For: Message:	Mr. Alvarez We need the report by noon. Call Ms. James as soon as possible.
For:	Dr. James The new fax machine is ready. Pick it up this afternoon.

Look at the message slips. Ask someone to give these messages.

Grammar note: I	Vegative infinitives
Request Don't call him today. Don't go home yet.	Message Please ask Jan not to call him today. Could you tell him not to go home yet?

Don't go home yet. Could you felf him not	na go nome yet?
Michael - Don't meet me at the airport until midnight. The plane is going to be late.	1
Lucy— We're meeting at Dino's house before the concert Don't forget the tickets.	2

Christopher-	
The beach party starts at noon.	
Dan't he latel	t

	y: Hello. Grant and Lee.		
Ms. Curtis	s: May / speak to Ms. Grac	Schmidt, please?	
	(May 1/ Would you)		
Secretary	r: I'm She's not in.	billing the last for free	
	(busy/sorry)	an I leave/Can I tal	ke.
	a message?		4
Ms. Curtis	s: Yes, please. This is Ms. Curtis.	V011	展 图
	(Woul	d/Please)	
	(tell her that/ask her to)	the Plaza Hotel?	
	The number is 735-9001, Room 605	(Planes/Cr. 11)	55
	you	(Please/Could)	
	(tell her to call me/tell her to call he	(r)	THAT SEATT
Secretary	: OK, Ms. Curtis. I'll		
	(give her/tell her)	the message.	FAMILE BACK
Ms Curtis	Thank you very much. Good-bye.	rid store and man arti	
Match the	questions with the correct responses	Xếp các câu hỏi với	1/1
☐ Yes, ☐ That	questions with the correct responses please. Could you tell him Ros called?	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
☐ Yes, ☐ That	questions with the correct responses	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he'	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
☐ Yes, ☐ That☐ Yes. ☐	questions with the correct responses please. Could you tell him Ros called? 's OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241.	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. Yes. Yes. Would ye	questions with the correct responses please. Could you tell him Ros called? S OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241.	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. I Would you	questions with the correct responses please. Could you tell him Ros called? S OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Du like to come to a party? I would be great. Thanks.	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. I Would you	questions with the correct responses please. Could you tell him Ros called? S OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241.	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. I Would ye Yes, that	please. Could you tell him Ros called? So OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Dou like to come to a party? E would be great. Thanks. ask her to call you back?	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. I Would you	please. Could you tell him Ros called? So OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Dou like to come to a party? E would be great. Thanks. ask her to call you back?	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. Would ye Yes, that Could I a	please. Could you tell him Ros called? So OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Dou like to come to a party? E would be great. Thanks. ask her to call you back?	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. Would ye Yes, that Could I a	please. Could you tell him Ros called? So OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Dou like to come to a party? I would be great. Thanks. Thanks. Thanks. The property of the property. The property of the property o	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah ☑ Yes, that would i	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. Would ye Yes, that Could I a	please. Could you tell him Ros called? So OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Dou like to come to a party? I would be great. Thanks. Thanks. Thanks. The property of the property. The property of the property o	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. I Would ye Yes, that Could I a Who's ca	please. Could you tell him Ros called? So OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Dou like to come to a party? I would be great. Thanks. Thanks. Thanks. The property of the property. The property of the property o	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah ☑ Yes, that would i	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock
Yes, That Yes. I Would ye Yes, that Could I a Who's ca	please. Could you tell him Ros called? So OK. I'll call back. My number is 669-3241. Dou like to come to a party? I would be great. Thanks. Thanks. Thanks. The property of the country of the country of the country of the country. The country of the countr	Xếp các câu hỏi với ☐ Let me see if he' ☐ My name's Grah ☑ Yes, that would i	i các câu đáp cho th s in. am. Graham Lock



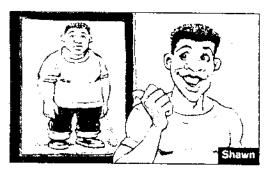
16 A change for the better!

Choose the correct responses. Chọn các câu đáp thích hợp

Thay đổi theo hướng tốt hơn

B: Well, I've grown a mustache. That's terrific! Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. The doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants		and .
■ I'm more outgoing now. ■ Well, my hair is a little longer now. A: A: I haven't seen you for ages. B: ■ I know. How have you been? ■ Well, I quit smoking. ■ My new job is more stressful. B: ■ Well, I've grown a mustache. ■ That's terrific! ■ Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: ■ I do more aerobics these days. ■ Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. ■ I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoan chinh các câu. Dâng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☑ move to a new apartment □ start going to the gym □ spend a lot of money on clothes □ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment □ there old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex	, ,	
Well, my hair is a little longer now. A: A: I haven't seen you for ages. B: I know. How have you been? Well, I quit smoking. My new job is more stressful. A: You know, I have three kids now. B: Well, I've grown a mustache. That's terrific! Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. Tm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment		
B: I know. How have you been? Well, I quit smoking. My new job is more stressful. A: You know, I have three kids now. B: Well, I've grown a mustache. That's terrific! Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more acrobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. Tm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hown chinh các câu. Dûng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.		
B: I know. How have you been? Well, I quit smoking. My new job is more stressful. A: You know, I have three kids now. B: Well, I've grown a mustache. That's terrific! Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more acrobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. Tm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hown chinh các câu. Dûng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.	A. T. I	7.5
■ I know. How have you been? ■ Well, I quit smoking. ■ My new job is more stressful. 3. A: You know, I have three kids now. B: ■ Well, I've grown a mustache. ■ That's terrific! ■ Say, you've really changed your hair. 4. A: How are you? B: ■ I do more aerobics these days. ■ Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. ■ I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Houn chinh các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☑ move to a new apartment □ start going to the gym □ spend a lot of money on clothes □ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment □ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment □ stop eating out in restaurants 2. Kim and Anna □ Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.		
■ Well, I quit smoking. ■ My new job is more stressful. 3. A: You know, I have three kids now. B: ■ Well, I've grown a mustache. ■ That's terrific! ■ Say, you've really changed your hair. 4. A: How are you? B: ■ I do more aerobics these days. ■ Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. ■ I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☑ move to a new apartment □ start going to the gym □ spend a lot of money on clothes □ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna □ Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex □		——
■ My new job is more stressful. A: You know, I have three kids now. B: ■ Well, I've grown a mustache. ■ That's terrific! ■ Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: ■ I do more aerobics these days. ■ Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. ■ I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoùn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☑ move to a new apartment □ start going to the gym □ spend a lot of money on clothes □ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment □ there old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna □ Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex □	*	
B: Well, I've grown a mustache. That's terrific! Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. The doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. How chinh các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex		
B: Well, I've grown a mustache. That's terrific! Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. The doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. How chinh các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex	• My new job is more scressial.	
 ■ Well, I've grown a mustache. ■ That's terrific! ■ Say, you've really changed your hair. 4. A: How are you? B: ■ I do more aerobics these days. ■ Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. ■ I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chinh các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☑ move to a new apartment ☐ start going to the gym ☐ spend a lot of money on clothes ☐ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment ☐ the rold one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna ☐ Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex ☐ The days are those of the service of th	3. A: You know, I have three kids now.	11年10天
 Well, I've grown a mustache. That's terrific! Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ✓ move to a new apartment	B:	
Say, you've really changed your hair. A: How are you? B: I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. Tm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment		
B: I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. Tm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hown chinh các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.		
B: Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. Tm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.	 Say, you've really changed your hair. 	
B: Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. Tm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.	1 A: How are you?	(11 T
 I do more aerobics these days. Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ✓ move to a new apartment		
 Well, actually, I have contact lenses now. I'm doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chinh các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ✓ move to a new apartment		
Tim doing really well. Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoùn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☐ move to a new apartment ☐ start going to the gym ☐ spend a lot of money on clothes ☐ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment ☐ Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna ☐ Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex ☐		(\ /\ <i>i</i>
Complete the sentences. Use information in the box and the present perfect. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành move to a new apartment start going to the gym spend a lot of money on clothes stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.		1\ (\)
Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☐ move to a new apartment ☐ start going to the gym ☐ spend a lot of money on clothes ☐ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment ☐ Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna ☐ Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex	Thi doing featly well.	
Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng thông tin trong khung và thì hiện tại hoàn thành ☐ move to a new apartment ☐ start going to the gym ☐ spend a lot of money on clothes ☐ stop eating out in restaurants 1. Judy 's moved to a new apartment ☐ Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna ☐ Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex		
Her old one was too small. 2. Kim and Anna Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex	•	
Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper. 3. Alex	✓ move to a new apartment ☐ start going to t	
	 ✓ move to a new apartment	
He looks healthier, and he has more energy.	 ✓ move to a new apartment	in restaurants
	 ✓ move to a new apartment	in restaurants

Describe how these people have changed. Use the present or the past tense. Miệu tả xem những người này đã thay đổi ra sao. Dùng thì hiện tại hoặc quá khứ



1. Shawn lost a lot of weight





Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given.

Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, đùng các từ được cho sắn

1.	Alice quit eating rich food.	
	Alice eats healthier foods now.	(healthier)
2.	James lost a lot of weight.	
		(heavier)
3.	Mary goes to a new school now.	
		(change)
4.	Tess isn't married anymore.	ŭ
	•	(divorce)
5.	I've grown my hair.	
		(longer)
6.	We don't smoke anymore.	•
		(quit)

5 Life changes M. Cuộc sống thay đổi sand and mi sprow and second rose and all and

A Have you ever . . .

lost a job

☐ had money problems

☐ had trouble making friends

worked in a foreign country

B Read the passages on the left. Then read the passages on the right. Match the people's lives two years ago with their lives today. Underline at least two changes in each person's life.





Two years ago

Nov

- Aki Two years ago, I was a student, and I
 thought life was really good. I got up late. I spent
 the day talking to friends, and then I studied all
 night. I wore jeans and sweatshirts and had long
 hair and a mustache. I felt free.
- a. Now my life has changed. I got married! My wife and I often have friends over for dinner. We're taking evening classes. It's great!
- Luis I moved to a new town two years ago. My
 job was interesting, but I was single, and I didn't
 have any friends. People at work were friendly
 but not very outgoing. We never did anything
 after work.
- b. Now I work as a computer programmer for an international company. I've moved to Seoul and have started to learn Korean. Korean food is great, and I've gained several kilos. I feel much happier and healthier.
- Rosie My life seemed to come to an end two years ago. I lost my job. Then I lost weight, and looked terrible. Money became a problem. I was yery sad. I needed some good luck.
- c. Now I actually look forward to getting up early in the morning and going to work. Of course, I dress up now, and my hair is shorter. But I don't really mind. At least my evenings are free!

Hoàn chính bài dàm thoại sau. Dùng các từ được cho sắn Melissa: What	□ broke	☑ graduation 	□ loan	☐ retire		successful	☐ responsible
and she can't pay her rent. 3. Now that I'm going to college, I want to be moreabout doing my classwork. 4. Lucy wants to pay off her studentbefore she buys a car. 5. Philip plans toat an early age. He's almost 55 now. 6. I'd like to bein my first job. Then I can get a better job and a raise. Complete this conversation. Use the words given. Hoàn chính bài dàm thoại sau. Dùng các từ được cho sản Melissa: What	1. After	graduation	_ , I plan to	look for a job).		
about doing my classwork. 4. Lucy wants to pay off her student before she buys a car. 5. Philip plans to				_ -	,		
4. Lucy wants to pay off her student before she buys a car. 5. Philip plans to							
He's almost 55 now. 6. I'd like to be	4. Lucy want	s to pay off her stu					
Complete this conversation. Use the words given. Hoàn chính bài dàm thoại sau. Dùng các từ được cho sắn Melissa: What				at an early a	ge.		
Melissa: What				my first job.	٠		
I					ا. سه		
Melissa: Really? Where							
Leo: Well, I	Leo: I			(want, g	(et) a	summer job.	
Latin America. What about you, Melissa? Melissa: I	Leo: I I			(want, g	(et) a ve) m	summer job. oney for a va	
Melissa: I	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea	lly? Where		(want, g	(et) a ve) m	summer job. oney for a va (like, go)?	
I	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel	lly? Where		(like, sa	(et) a ve) m	summer job. oney for a va (like, go)?	
for it? Melissa: I (hope, borrow) some money from my brother. I have a good excuse. I (plan, take) courses	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel' Lati	lly? Where l, I in America. What a	about you, M	(want, g	get) a ve) m —— ove, tr	summer job. oney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to	acation.
Melissa: I (hope, borrow) some money from my brother. I have a good excuse. I (plan, take) courses	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel Lati Melissa: I	lly? Where l, I in America. What a	about you, M	(want, g (like, sa (lo (lelissa?	get) a ve) m ve, tr get) a	summer job. oney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to	acation. vay.
some money from my brother. I have a good excuse. I (plan, take) courses	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel' Lati Melissa: I I	lly? Where l, I in America. What a	about you, M	(want, g	(et) a ve) m ve, tr get) a	summer job. oney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to a job right av Spain and P	acation. way. Yay.
(plan, take) courses	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel Lati Melissa: I I Leo: Sour	lly? Where l, I in America. What a	about you, M	(want, g	(et) a ve) m ve, tr get) a	summer job. oney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to a job right av Spain and P	acation. way. Yay.
	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel Lati Melissa: I I Leo: Sour	lly? Where l, I n America. What a nds great, but how t?	about you, M	(want, g	yet) a ve) m ve, tr get) a	summer job. coney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to a job right av Spain and P	acation. way. Yay.
in Spanish and Portuguese.	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel' Lati Melissa: I Leo: Sour for i Melissa: I som	lly? Where l, I in America. What a nds great, but how t? e money from my b	about you, M	(want, g (like, sa (lo lelissa? (not go, (want, g (hope, b	get) a ve) m ve, tr get) a go) to orrow use. I	summer job. coney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to a job right av Spain and P	acation. way. Yay.
	Leo: I I Melissa: Rea Leo: Wel Lati Melissa: I Leo: Sour for i Melissa: I som	lly? Where l, I in America. What a nds great, but how t? e money from my b	about you, M	(want, g (like, sa (lo lelissa? (not go, (want, g (hope, b	get) a ve) m ve, tr get) a go) to orrow use. I	summer job. coney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to a job right av Spain and P	acation. way. Yay.
	Leo: I	lly? Where l, I in America. What a nds great, but how t? e money from my b	about you, M	(want, g (like, sa (lo lelissa? (not go, (want, g (hope, b	get) a ve) m ve, tr get) a go) to orrow use. I	summer job. coney for a va (like, go)? ravel) to a job right av Spain and P	acation. way. Yay.

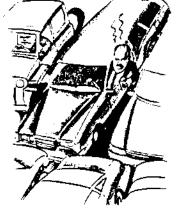
people on tours to Latin America. Why don't you come on my first tour?

Imagine you have these problems. Write three sentences about changing these situations. Use words in the box.

Tưởng tượng ban gặp các vấn đề sau. Viết ba câu về việc thay đổi các tình huống này. Dùng các từ trong khung

 I'm not interested in my job these days. I spend three hours driving to and from work every day, and I don't make enough money! I can't find a new job, though, because of my poor computer skills.

hope to	I want to	I plan to
<u> </u>		
		



I've become less careful about my health lately. I've stopped
jogging because I'm bored with it. I've started smoking
because I have terrible problems at work. And I'm always
tired because I can't sleep at night.

I'm going to	I'd like to	I'd love to



3. I just moved to a new town, and I don't know anyone. People at work are friendly but not very outgoing – I never do anything after work. I haven't had a date in about four months. And I live outside of town, so I don't have many neighbors.

I'm going to	I want to	I plan to	
			_
			_



9	Choose the correct words to complete each sentence. Use the correct form of the word or add any words necessary.
	Chọn các từ thích hợp để hoàn chỉnh mỗi cáu. Dùng dạng thích hợp của từ hoặc thêm vào bất củ từ nào cần thiết
	1. William would like <u>to retire</u> early – around 50. (retire/marry/divorce)
	2. Heather's salary is much before, She had to take a pay cut. (low/short/high)
	3. I dress up for my new job, and I'm always on time now. I'm these days. (different/outgoing/responsible)
	4. After graduation, Jack plans for an international company. (retire/work/move)
	5. This job is my last job. (responsible/stressful/expensive)
	6. Mel hopes to a small town. (move/live/change)
10	Advise people how to make changes in their lives. Use expressions like the ones in the box. Khuyên người ta cách thực hiện những thay đổi trong cuộc sống của mình. Dùng các cách diễn c như các cách trong khung
	You should You shouldn't Why don't you?
	1. I've gained a lot of weight this year.
	You should be more careful about your diet.
	or Why don't you spend more time at the gym? 2. My hair is longer, but it doesn't look good.
	3. I've gotten tired of wearing the same old clothes.
•	4. I want to start a successful business.
	5. I'm often bored on weekends.
	6. The food I cook always tastes bland.
	7. I hope to retire early.
,	8. I've finished New Interchange Book 1, but I still want to improve my English!

UNIT 1

Please call me Chuck.

2 CHECKING INFORMATION

A Answers:

i. b

2. d

3.a 4.c

3 NAMES AND TITTLES

B Audio script

1. CHUCK: Good afternoon.

WOMAN: Good afternoon, Mr. Chang. Please sit down.

2. CHUCK: Good morning.

WOMAN: Hello, Chuck. Nice to see you.

3. MAN: Hello, Liz.

LIZ: Hi. How are you?

4, LIZ: Hi, I'm Elizabeth Mandel.

MAN: It's nice to meet you, Ms. Mandel.

5. MAN: Carol, this is Ms. Kim.

WOMAN: Pleased to meet you, Ms. Kim.

3. I

AMY: Nice to meet you, too.

AMY: Hi! How are you?
 MAN: Oh, hi, Amy, I'm fine.

Answers

1. F 2. L

4, F 5, F 6, I

5 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answer

YQKO: Rich, who are the two women over there?

RICH: Oh, their names are Lisa and Kate.

RICH: Hi, Kate. This is Yoko. She's from Japan.

YOKO: Hello, Nice to meet you.

KATE; Good to meet you, Yoko.

LISA: And my name is Lisa.

YOKO: Hi, Lisa.

RICH: Lisa and Kate are from Canada.

YOKO: Oh? Where are you from in Canada?

KATE: We're from Toronto.

B Answers

- 1. Who is that?
- 2. Where is he from?
- 3. What is his last name?
- 4. Who are the two students over there?
- 5. Where are they from?

6 SNAPSHOT

Possible answers

(second question)

a handshake (Canada, Peru, England)

a bow (Korea, Japan, Indonesia)

a kiss on the cheek (Brazil, France, Italy)

a hug (the United States, Denmark, Egypt)

a pat on the back (Greece, Russia, Mexico)

7 CONVERSATION

Audio script

PAULO: Are you from the United States, Sarah? SARAH: (laughing) No, I'm not. I'm from Australia.

PAULO: And what are you studying?

SARAH: I'm studying engineering, too. In fact, I think

we're in the same class! PAULO: Say, I think you're right!

Answer

She's from Australia.

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

1. A: Are you from the United States?

B: Yes, I am. I'm from Chicago.

2. A: Is Rosa in English 101?

B: No, she isn't/s not. She's in English 102.

3, A: Are you and Monique from France?

B: Yes, we are. We're from Pans.

B Answers

 No, they aren't/they're not. They're on the volleyball team.

2. Yes, they are.

No, they aren't/they're not. They're from Brazil.

4. Yes, he is.

No, he isn't/he's not. He's a student.

9 LISTENING

Audio script

 MAN; Joe, this is my friend Linda Tanaka. We're in the same English class.

JOE: Hi, Linda, I'm Joseph Miller. Everyone calls me Joe.

LINDA: Nice to meet you, Joe. And what's your last name again?

JOE: It's Miller, M-I-L-L-E-R.

LINDA: Where are you from, Joe?

JOE: I'm from here, the United States - originally from Chicago.

LINDA; What are you studying here?

JOE: Chemistry.

LINDA: Oh, chemistry. That sounds interesting.

 CLERK: OK, Ms. Vera. Let me just check this information, Is your first name spelled E-L-E-N? ELENA: No, it's not, My first name is Elena. It's

spelled E-L-E-N-A.

CLERK: OK. Thanks. And you're from Chile, correct? ELENA: No, I'm not from Chile. I'm from Mexico.

CLERK: Oh, sorry, Mexico. But you are studying

English, right?

ELENA: No, I'm not, I'm studying engineering. CLERK: Engineering, OK, Got it.

3. MAN: Say, are you in Sook Kim?

IN SOOK: Yes, that's right

MAN: is your brother Min Ho Kim?

IN SOOK: Yes, he is!

MAN: Tell me, is Min Ho still here at the University? INSOOK: No, he is not. Min Ho is at home in Korea.

MAN: Oh, he's in Korea! Is he in school there? INSOOK: Yes. He's studying English at Seoul

University this semester.

Kim

Answers

3. Min Ho

First name Last name Where from? Studying?

1. Joe Miller the U.S. chemistry

2. Elena Vera Mexico engineering

Korea

.10 READING

English

UNIT 2

How do you spend your day?

2 WORD POWER

B Answers (extra examples in boldface)

Professionals

architect, engineer, professor, lawyer, doctor.

Management positions

company director, supervisor, sales manager, president, CEO (chief executive officer).

Service occupations

flight attendant, salesperson, security guard, waiter/waitress, hairstylist.

Office work

receptionist, secretary, word processor, mailroom clerk, departmental assistant.

3 WORK AND WORKPLACES

Answers

She's a salesperson. She works in a department store. She sells clothes.

He's a chef. He works in a restaurant. He cooks food. He's a flight attendant. He works for an airline. He serves passengers.

She's a carpenter. She works for a construction company. She builds houses.

He's a receptionist. He works in an office. He answers the phone.

She's a nurse. She works in a hospital. She cares for patients.

4 CONVERSATION

Audio script

ANDREA: What do you do, exactly? Do you make hamburgers?

JASON: No. I don't, I just take orders.

ANDREA: And what's it like there? Do you like your job?

JASON: Sure. It's fun! And I get free hamburgers, too!

Answers

- 1. He takes orders.
- He likes his job because it's fun. He gets free hamburgers, too.

5 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A. Answers

- 1. A: What do you do?
 - B: I'm a student. I study business.
 - A: And where do you go to school?
 - B: I go to Jefferson College.
 - A: How do you like your classes?
 - B: I like them a lot,
- 2. A: What does Kanya do?

B: She's a teacher. She teaches mathematics at a school in Bangkok.

A: And what about Somsak? Where does he work?

B: He works for an electronics company.

A: What does he do, exactly?

B: He's a salesman. He sells computer equipment.

B Possible answers (in sentence form)

A doctor works in a hospital, She has an office, too. She works long hours. She cares for patients. A travel agent works for a travel agency. He takes trips, too. He makes reservations and writes airline tickets for customers.

A police officer works outside and patrols the city in a police car. She has a partner. She writes traffic tickets, too.

7 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

HELEN: And you, Daniel? What's your day like? DANIEL: Well, right now I'm in school, so I just have a part-time job. But I'm pretty busy. I get up early, around six A.M. Then I work from seven until nine. I go to school and study until four P.M. Then I work again from five until seven.

HELEN: So what do you do?

DANIEL: (laughs) I'm a dog walker

HELEN: A what? What's that?

DANIEL: A dog walker. I take people's dogs for walks. It's great, and it keeps me in shape, too!

Answers

- He gets up around six A.M., goes to work at seven, and studies until four P.M.
- 2. He's a dog walker.

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- I get up at/around/before six in the morning on weekdays.
- 2.1 go to bed around/at/before/after midnight on weeknights.
- 3. I start work at 11:30 at night.
- I arrive at work early on Mondays, at/before/around 7:00 A.M,
- I have lunch at/around three in the afternoon on weekdays.
- I stay up late on weekends.
- I have a little snack around/at 9:00 in the evening.
- 8. I sleep until noon on Sundays.

10 LISTENING

A Audlo script

TINA: What do you do, Rodney?

RODNEY: I'm a chef.

TINA: Hey, that's great! So what are your work hours like?

RODNEY: They're OK. I work in the afternoons and evenings. I get up around nine A.M., and I work from eleven A.M. until ten P.M. I get home fairly late, about eleven P.M. And I'm usually in bed by one in the morning. And what do you do, Tina?

TINA: Well, I'm an office manager. It's a regular nineto-five of fice job, so I get up at seven A.M. and get home around six P.M. That's OK, though, because I like to go out at night, I go to bed around midnight on weekdays.

RODNEY: What about you, Ellen?

ELLEN: Well, my job is a bit different - I'm a flight attendant. I start work at six in the morning, so I have to get up before five A.M.

TINA: Wow! That's too early for me!

ELLEN: Then I often have long flights, so I don't get home until nine o'clock at night. But I always go straight to bed - around ten.

Answers

	Job	Gets up	Gets home at	Goes to bed at
Rodney Tina	chef office	9 A.M 7A.M.	11 P.M. 6 P.M.	1 A.M. midnight
Ellen	manager flight attendan	5 A.M.	9 P.M.	10 P.M.

11 READING

A Answers			
	Brandon	Lauren	Erica
1. To earn money for college	✓		*
2. To buy nice clothes		✓	
3. To go out on the weekend	1	✓	
4. To pay for a car		/	
To get job experience			✓
D A			

B Answers

- 1. Ss' answers will vary.
- 2. Brandon works 16 hours a week (maybe fewer, depending on whether or not he is given a lunch break), Lauren 20, and Erica 15.
- 3. Brandon earns \$88, Lauren \$135, and Erica \$123.75 per week.
- 4. Ss' answers will vary

UNIT 3

How much is it?

1 SNAPSHOT

Possible answers

Michael Perry spends most of his money on housing (31% = \$9.643).

Rebecca Burns spends most of her money on entertainment (55% = \$1,441).

Michael spends only 5% (\$1,555) of his yearly expenses on entertainment, but Rebecca spends over half, 55% (\$1,441). Rebecca also spends more on clothing (15%) than Michael does (5%).

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

MARIA; Steve, come and look at this tie. What do you think?

STEVE: It's a nice tie, but look at the price - \$25! MARIA: Oh, that's not bad. And I want you to have it. Let me get it for you.

STEVE: OK. Sure!

Answers

- They buy a tie.
- Maria pays for it.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. A: Excuse me. How much are those jeans?
 - B: Which ones? Do you mean these?
 - A: No, the light blue ones.
 - B: Oh, they're \$59.95.
 - A: Almost sixty dollars! Are you kidding?
- 2. A: I like that backpack over there. How much is it?
- B: Which one? Each backpack has a different price.
 - A: That red one.
 - B: It's \$98.50. But this green one is only \$45.
- A: OK. Let me look at it.

5 LISTENING

Audio script

- 1 TIM: Look at these! Rollerblades! I really want a pair SANDRA: But they're pretty expensive. They're 165! TIM: Oh, yeah. You're right. A hundred and sixty-five dollars is too expensive.
- TIM; Here's a great cap for you!

SANDRA: That one? Hmm. Is it expensive?

TIM: Not really, It's only \$9,95.

SANDRA: Nine ninety-five is very reasonable. I think

- 3. SANDRA: What do you think of those sunglasses? They're only \$16.
 - TIM: They're nice. Try them on.

SANDRA: Oh, no. I think they're too big.

TIM: You're right. They are too big.

Answers

Item	Price	Do they	Reason
		buy it?	
 Rollerblades 	\$165.00	No	too expensive
2. cap	\$ 9.95	Yes	very reasonable
sunglasses	\$ 16.00	No	too big

7 WORD POWER

A Answers

1. a plastic bracelet	5. leather gloves
2. a gold ring	a cotton shirt
3. a silk scarf	silver earnings
4. polyester pants	rubber boots

Possible answers

scarf, pants, and shirt: cotton, wool, silk, linen, polyester. rayon, nylon, knit, satin

gloves: leather, rubber, plastic, suede, cotton, lace, wool knit, polyester

boots: leather, rubber, plastic, suede

bracelet, ring, and earnings: plastic, gold, silver, copper, brass, glass, jade, diamond, pearl, ruby, emerald

8 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

ANNE; Wow! That jacket is really expensive! I don't want to spend that much money.

SUE: Oh, look. There are some things on sale over

ANNE: Oooh, you're right! These T-shirts are really nice. And they're cheap, too, I like this one with the bird on it.

SUE: That is nice! And the colors are really pretty. ANNE: Great! I'll take it.

Answers

- 1. Anne buys a T-shirt with a bird on it.
- 2. Sue thinks it's nice and the colors are really pretty.

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. A: Which tie is prettier, the orange one or the blue one?
 - B: Well, the blue one is silk. And silk is nicer than polyester.
- At 1s this green shirt larger than that yellow one?
 No, the yellow one is bigger. It's a large. The green one is a medium.
- 3. A: Which are cheaper, the brown boots or the black ones?
 - B: The brown ones are leather. And leather is more expensive than rubber,

11 READING

Answers

- 1. T
- F The Home Shopping Network is the name of a television shopping channel.
- F About 37% of American households have personal computers.

UNIT 4

Do you like Jazz?

8. New Age

1 SNAPSHOT

Audio script

1. pop 5. rap 2. gospel 6. country 3. classical 7. rock

4. jazz Aпswers

3. classical 2. gospel
6. country 4. jazz
8. New Age 5. rap
1. pop 7. rock

2 WORD POWER

B Answers

Movies TV programs Music horror films game shows classical science fiction news jazz thrillers soap operas DOD westerns talk shows salsa adventure cartoons reggae comedies documentaries opera musicals sports events heavy metal

3 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

TOM: What about singers, Liz? Who do you like? LIZ: Oh, I like lots of different ones. I guess my favorite singer is Whitney Houston.

TOM: Whitney Houston? You must be kidding!

LIZ: Why? Don't you like her?

TOM: No, I don't. I guess her voice is OK, but I don't like her songs.

Answers

- 1. Whitney Houston.
- 2. No, he doesn't. Her voice is OK, but he doesn't like her songs.

4 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. A: Do you like horror films?
 - B: No, I don't like them very much. I like comedies. A: How about Lisa and Brian? Do they like horror films?
 - B. Well, I think Bran does. Why don't you ask him?
- 2. A: Do you like the singer Bonnie Raitt?
 - 8: Yes, I do. I really like her a lot.
 - A: What kind of music does she sing?
 - B: She's a rock singer.
 - A: Does she sing country music, too?
 - B: I don't know. I have her new CD. Let's listen to it.

7 LISTENING

Audio script

HOSTESS. (music and clapping) Welcome to Who's My Date? Today, Linda is going to meet Bill, John, and Tony. So, let's start with the first question... on music. Bill, what kind of music do you like?

BILL: Oh, classical music.

HOSTESS: Classical, OK, And how about you, John?

JOHN: Well, I like jazz.

HOSTESS: And you, Tony?

TONY: My favorite music is rock. HOSTESS: How about you, Linda?

LINDA: Well, I like pop music. I don't like jazz or

classical music very much. (clapping)

HOSTESS: OK. Now let's talk about movies, Bill, what

kind of movies do you like?

BILL: I like thrillers.

HOSTESS: And how about you, John?

JOHN: Oh, I like westerns.

HOSTESS: Westerns are good. And how about you,

Tony?

TONY: Hove horror films.

HOSTESS: And what about you, Linda?

LINDA: I really like horror films, too. (audience laughs) HOSTESS: And now for question number three. Let's talk about TV programs. Bill, what kind of TV programs do you like?

BILL: Well, I like to watch TV news programs.

HOSTESS: John?

JOHN: Uh, well, you know, I really like TV talk shows.

HOSTESS: And Tony, how about you? TONY: I like TV game shows a lot. HOSTESS: And Linda, what do you like?

LINDA: Well, I like TV talk shows and game shows.

(clapping/buzzer sounds)

HOSTESS: OK! Time is up! Now who's the best date for Linda?

A Answers

Bill John Tony Linda	Music classical jazz rock pop	Movies thrillers westerns horror films	TV programs news programs talk shows game shows talk shows and
			game shows

B Possible answer

Tony. (They both like horror films and game shows, and Linda never disagrees with what he likes. However, she disagrees with both Bill and John on music, i.e., she doesn't like classical or jazz.)

10 LISTENING

Audio script

 JAKE: Hey, Paula, would you like to see a movie on Wednesday?

PAULA: Maybe. What time?

JAKE: How a bout nine o'clock show? I'm not free before then.

PAULA: Nine o'clock? Oh, sorry Jake. That's too late for me. I have to get up early on weekdays.

LUCY: Chris, there's a good jazz planist playing downtown. Would you like to go?

CHRIST: A jazz planist! I'd love to go! When is the show?

LUCY: It's on Thursday at 8:30.

CHRIST: That's perfect. Thanks a lot, Lucy.

3. RICH: Hey, Ed, do you want to play basenall on Saturday?

ED: Yeah. That would be great, Rich. What time on Saturday?

RICH: How about two P.M. ?

ED: Two is fine.

Answers

	Event/			
	Activity	Day	Time	Accept
1. Jake & Paula	movie	Wed.	9:00 P.M.	No
2. Lucy & Chris	jazz pianist	Thur	8:30 P.M.	Yes
3. Rich & Ed	basebali	Sat	2:00 PM	Yes

12 READING

A Answers

t. Caetano Veloso	Nationality Brazilian	Types of music he/she blends rock with 8ahia
2. Bonnie Raitt	American	region reck with country and blues
3. Cui Jian	Chinese	jazz and rap with Chinese

B. Answers

- They blend their country's music with popular sounds,
- 2. He makes them like a painter paints his canvas.
- 3. She has a strong, rough voice.
- He wants it to express the feelings of Chinese young people.

Review of units 1-4

2. WHAT'S THE QUESTION

Answers

- 1. Are you and Teresa in the same class?/Is Teresa in your class?
- 2. Where does your sister go to school?
- 3. What time do you get up on Sundays?
- 4. Is your teacher American?
- 5. Do you like rock music?
- 6. When do you leave home on weekdays?
- 7. Would you like to watch a video with me?
- 8. Which sweater is nicer?/Which sweater do you like better/more?/Which sweater do you prefer?

4. LISTENING

Audio script

- 1. Do you leave home early to get to work?
- 2. How do you spend Sundays?
- 3. How much is a laptop computer?
- 4. Are you a student here?
- 5. So, what kind of music do you like?
- 6. Would you like to see a movie on Friday night?

Answers

- 1. Yes, very early. Before 7:00 A.M.
- 2. Oh, I just stay in and work around the house.
- 3. A good laptop computer costs over \$2,000.
- 4. Actually, I work here.
- 5. Almost any kind except classical.
- 6. Thanks, I'd love to. What time?

UNIT 5

Tell me about your family

1. WORD POWER

A. Answers

grandf	ather and grand	mother
Dennis = Linda father and mother		Gary = Diane uncle and aunt
Sam = Karen Sam (husband) and his wife	James = Lisa brother and sister-in-law	Tracey cousin

George = Ruth

Nicole = James, Jr. niece and nephew

2. LISTENING

Audio script

- A: (newspaper unfolding) Oh! Here's an article about my favorite movie star, Warren Beatty, Say, do you know who his sister is? It's Shirley MacLaine!
 - B: I don't think I know her.
 - A: Sure you do! She's a movie star, too,
 - B: Well, do you know who Warren Beatty's wife is?
 - A: Yes. It says right here Annette Bening.
 - B: Yeah, that's right.
- 2. A: I'm reading a really interesting book about Charlie Sheen
 - B: Oh, I love his movies.
 - A: Yeah, me, too. They're usually very funny. His father is Martin Sheen, you know.

B: Oh, sure. They're in that movie together. What's it

A: Do you mean Wall Street?

B: Yeah, that's the one.

A: Well, I really prefer his comedies - like Men at

B: Uh-huh, Charlie Sheen's brother is in that movie. What's his name again?

A: Uh. Emilio Estevez

Answers

1. sister, wife

2. father, brother

3 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

SUE: What about your parents, Rita? Where do they

RITA: They live in Texas. SUE: Oh, where in Texas?

RITA: In Austin, It's a small city, but it's very nice.

SUE: And are they still working?

RITA: Oh, yes. My mother is teaching at the university there, and my father is an architect.

- 1. Rita's parents live in Austin, Texas.
- 2. Her mother is teaching at the university there, and her UNIT 6 father is an architect.

5 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- A: Is anyone in your family looking for a job? B: Yes, my sister is. She's working part time in a restaurant now, but she's looking for a job in a theate company. She loves acting.
- 2. A: What is your brother doing these days? B: He's going to college this semester. He likes it a lot. He's studying mathematics.
- 3. A: Where do your parents live? B: They live in Chicago most of the time, but they're staving in Florida this winter. They have a house. there

7 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

RYAN: Families sure are different in the United States. SOO MI: Well, there are more divorces, but what else is different?

RYAN: Well, I think people get married younger.

SOO MI: Oh? How much younger?

RYAN: Well, I think some people get married before the age of 20.

SOO MI: Really? What else?

RYAN; Hmm. A lot of women work after they get married. And I think most women who have babies go back to work fairly soon, too.

Possible answers

Avan says that U.S. tamilies are different from Korean families in several ways:

- People in the U.S. get married younger some before the age of 20.
- A lot of women work after they get married.
- 3. Most women who have bables go back to work fairly

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Possible answers

- In Australia, nearly all/most married couples have children.
- 2. Not many/A few/Few 20- to 24-year-olds in the United States are divorced.
- Some/Many (of the) people in Germany live alone.
- 4. In China, many/a lot of/some women get married by the age of 22.

10 READING

A Possible answers

	Problems
1. Steve	has to help Judy with the
	housework; doesn't enjoy it
2. Judy	feels tired and too busy; wornes
	about the children
3. Steve and Judy	don't have a lot of free time
	together

B. Answers

- Ss' answers will vary.
- Josh and Emily are benefiting from Judy's working.

How often do vou exercise?

2 WORD POWER

A Possible answers

∍r	People	Children	Teens	Young adults	Middle-aged people	Olde
	aerobics		1	1	1	
	baseball	✓	1	1		
	bicycling	1	1	✓	≠	
	Rollerblading	1	1	1		
	soccer	1	1	1		
	swimming	✓	4	- /	~	-
	tennis	1	1	1	*	- 1
	weight training	ng	1	1	✓	
	yoga			1	✓	1

B Answers

do aerobics	go bicycling	play basebal!
do weight training	go Rollerblading	play soccer
do yoga	go swimming	play tennis

Possible answers

do + an activity involving martial arts or individual types of exercises

go + an activity ending in -ing (exception: do +weight training)

play + a sport played with a ball (exception: go +bowling)

3 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

MARIE: So, what else do you like to do, Paul? PAUL: Well, I like video games a lot, I play them every day, it drives my mom crazy!

MARIE: Hey, I play video games all the time, too.

PAUL: Well, listen, I have some great new games. Why don't we play some after class today?

MARIE: OK!

Answer

He plays video games.

4 GRAMMAR

8 Answers

- 1 A: What do you usually do on Saturday mornings? B: Nothing much. I almost always sleep until noon.
- 2.A: Do you ever go bicycling?
 - 8: Yeah, I often go bicycling on Saturdays.
- 3. A: How often do you usually play sports?
 - B: Well, I play tennis twice a week.
- 4. A: What do you usually do after class?
 - B: I go out with my classmates about three times a week.
- 5. A: How often do you usually exercise?
 - B: I seldom exercise.

7 LISTENING

Audio script

WANDA: So, what do you usually do in the evening, Ted?

TED: I exercise a lot. I like to go jogging after work. KIM: Yeah? How often do you go jogging?

TED: About four or five times a week.

WANDA: Well, I guess you're in great shape.

TED: Thanks!

KIM: You're in great shape, too, Wanda!

WANDA: Oh, thanks, Kim. I usually go to the gym and work out in the evenings. I love it! And I meet a lot of my friends there.

TED: How often do you go?

WANDA: About three times a week, I guess. What about you, Kim? Do you ever work out in the evenings?

KIM: No, I don't exercise very much. I almost always practice my guitar after work. I practice for a couple of hours every night.

TED: Gee, you must be pretty good!

Answers

Favorite activity How often?

Ted jogging about 4-5 times a week
Wanda working out about 3 times a week
Kim practicing the guitar every night

10 LISTENING

Audio script

ANNE: How good are you at sports, John? JOHN: Are you kidding? I'm terrible! But I love to watch sports. I go to football or baseball games all the time. And I buy three or four different sports magazines every week.

ANNE: Wow!

PHIL: Do you like sports, Anne?

ANNE: Oh, yes. I like to exercise. But I don't watch sports very much, and I never buy sports magazines. PHIL: How much time do you spend exercising? ANNE: Well, I guess I exercise about two or three hours a day. I do aerobics three times a week, and the other days I go swimming. It makes me feel good.

PHIL: That's great!

JOHN: And what about you, Phil?

PHIL: Oh, I'm too lazy to play sports - I really hate exercising! And I almost never go to any sporting events. In my free time, I like to sit with my feet up and watch my favorite TV shows.

Answers

1. Phil 2. Anne 3. John

11 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. How good are you at volleyball?
- 2. How well do you swim?
- 3. How often do you watch sports?
- 4. How much time do you spend exercising?

12 READING

Answers (helpful information in parentheses)

- 1. < (lifts the spirit)
- 2. / (builds confidence)
- 3. ✓ (makes the bones, muscles, heart, and lungs stronger)

4._

- √ (helps you learn new things).
- 6. ✓ (helps you . . . remember old information better)

7._

 (walking four to five miles . . . five times a week helps you live longer)

UNIT 7

We had a great time!

2 CONVERSATION

Audio script

KATE: Did you do anything on Sunday, Chris? CHRIS: No, I just stayed home all day. What about you Kate? What did you do?

KATE: I met some friends.

CHRIS: Oh, where did you go?

KATE: We went to a great outdoor concert. Then we

had dinner out and went dancing.

CHRIS: It sounds like you had a busy weekend!

KATE: Yeah, I guess I did.

Answers

- She met some friends.
- She went to a (great outdoor) concert, had dinner out, and went dancing.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1.A: Did you go out on Friday night?
 - B: No, I didn't. I invited friends over, and I cooked dinner for them.
- 2.A: How did you spend your last birthday?
 - B: I had a party. Everyone enjoyed it, but the neighbors complained about the noise.
- 3.A: What did you do last night?
 - B: I went to the new Tom Cruise film, I loved it!
- 4.A: Did you do anything special over the weekend?
 B: Yes, I did. I went shopping. Unfortunately, I spent all my money. Now I'm broke!

5 WORD POWER

A. Answers

did	housework	dancing	the laundry
want	swimming		shopping
had	a good time		a party
saw	a movie		a play
look	a day off	a vacation	a trip

7 LISTENING

A Audio script

LAURA: So, what did you do last night, John? FOHN: Uh, I went to my boss's house for dinner. LAURA: Really? How was it? JOHN: Oh, the food was OK, but the people weren't very interesting. They talked about football all night, and I hate football. Then we watched some boring LAURA: Well, that doesn't sound like much fun. Gee, I had a great time last night! I went to a party and met

sports videos. I didn't get home until after midnight. an old school friend of mine. We haven't seen each other for years, so we had lots to talk about. We stayed at the party all night!

JOHN: Hmm, it sounds like you had a much better. time than I did.

LAURA: Yeah, I guess you're right!

Answers

	John	Laura
acd a boring time	✓	
nad a good time		1
met someone interesting		1
got home late	1	/

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 4 A: How long were your parents in Europe?
 - ਤੇ: They were there for a month.
 - A: Were they in London the whole time?
 - B: No, they weren't. They also went to Pans and Madrid.
- 2.A: Were you away last weekend?
 - B: Yes, I was, I was in San Francisco.
 - A: How was it?
 - B: It was great!
 - A: How was the weather?
 - B: Oh, it was foggy and cool as usual.
- 3.A: I was in Istanbul last summer.
 - B: Really? How long were you there?
 - A: For six weeks.
 - 3: Were you there on business or on vacation?
 - All was there on business.

11 LISTENING

Audio script

→BARBARA: Jason! Hi! Welcome back, You were away last week, right?

JASON: Yeah, I was on vacation. BARBARA: Where did you go? JASON: I went to San Francisco. BARBARA: Nice! How was it?

JASON: Oh. I loved it!

BARBARA: What did you like most about it?

JASON: Well, San Francisco is such a beautiful place. And the weather was actually pretty nice!

BARBARA: Well, that sounds more exciting than my last vacation.

JASON: What did you do, Barbara?

BARBARA: I just stayed home. I couldn't afford to take a trip anywhere.

JASON: Oh, that's too bad.

BARBARA: Oh, not really, I actually enjoyed my vacation, I went to the gym every day, and I lost three

JASON: Well, that's great. Good for you!

Anguare

V113146	13		
	Vacation place		Reason(s)
Jason	San Francisco	Yes	beautiful place;
			weather nice
Barbara	home	Yes	went to gym
			every day;
			lost 3 pounds

13 READING

A Answers

2./ 1 ٠ 3.-5. 4.1 6.-

Answers

- Margaret
- 2. Kevin
- 3. Sue
- 4. Ss' answers will vary.

UNIT 8

How do you like the neighhorbood?

1 WORD POWER

A. Answers

l.d 2.a 3.q 4.c 6.b 7.e

B Possible answers

Bank: It's a place where you keep your money. Bookstore: It's a place where you buy books and magazines.

Coffee shop: it's a place where you have coffee, juice, soft drinks, and snacks, or eat an informal/ inexpensive meal.

Dance club: It's a place where you dance to five music or to CDs.

Drugstore: it's a place where you buy medicine and toiletnes.

Gas station: it's a place where you get gas for your

Gym: It's a place where you work out/exercise and play sports.

Hotel: It's a place where you stay overnight away from home.

Post office: It's a place where you buy stamps and mailletters and packages.

Restaurant: it's a place where you eat a full/formal meal.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Possible answers

See part B below.

B Possible answers

- A: Is there a bank near here/around here/on Pine Street/close to the hotel?
- B: Yes, there is. There's one across from/opposite/infront of the hotel.
- A: Are there any gas stations near here/around here/ on Pine Street?
- B: No, there aren't, but there's one on the corner of First and Main.
- A: is there a department store around here/near here/ close to the park/on Main Street?
- B: Yes, there is. There's one next to the gym/across from the park.
- A: Are there any grocery stores around here/near here/on Pine Street?
- B: Yes, there are. There are some on Pine Street.
- A: Is there a gym near here/around here/on Elm Street?
- 8: No, there isn't, but there's one on Main Street, between the post office and the department store.
- A: Are there any hotels around here/near here?
- B: No, there aren't, But there are some on Elm Street, close to the park.
- A: Is there a laundromat around here/near here/close to the hotel/on First Avenue?
- B: Yes, there is. There's one behind the post office.
- A: is there a pay phone near here/around here/close to the park/on Main Street?
- B: Yes, there is. There's one across from the post office.
- A: Is there a post office near here/around here/on Pine Street?
- B: No, there isn't, but there's one on Main, in front of the park.
- A: Are there any restaurants near here/around here/ close to the hotel/on Maple Avenue?
- B: Yes, there are. There's one on Maple Avenue and one on Elm Street.

6 LISTENING

like one of Elvis's cars.

Audio script

CLERK: Good morning, Can I help you?

GUEST 1: Yes, Willhard some directions.

CLERK: Sure, What are you looking for?

GUEST 1: Well, first of all, we're looking for the Hard Rock Cafe. How far is it from here?

CLERK: Oh, it's just a few minutes from here - right across from the National Bank.

GUEST 2: The National Bank on Park Avenue? CLERK: Yes, that's the one.

GUEST 2: Is the Hard Rock Cafe a nice place? CLERK: Well, I think so. The food is good, and there are some interesting things to look at in the restaurant

GUEST 2: Great! And where is the Science Museum? CLERK: Well, that's near City Hall

GUEST 1: Near City Hall. OK, I know where that is. And what's the museum like?

CLERK: Actually, it's not very good, it's small, and

there isn't a lot to see there. It's really for young kids. GUEST 1: Oh, then maybe we won't go there.

GUEST 2: Mmm, one last question - is there an

aquarium in the city?
CLERK: Yes, there's a very good one. It's only about

six blocks from here. It's in the park next to the train station.

GUEST 2: Oh, next to the train station.

CLERK: Yes. Definitely visit the aquarium.

GUEST 1: Great! Thanks a lot.

CLERK: You're welcome. Have a good day!

Answers

Place Location Interesting?

Hard Rock Cale across from the National Yes Bank on Park Avenue

Science Museum near City Hall No Aquarium in the parknext Yes

to the train station

8. CONVERSATION

B. Audio script

DAN: How many restaurants are there in your neighborhood?

KIM; There are a lot, actually. There's a great pizza place on the corner. The pizzas are delicious and very cheap. And there's a good Chinese restaurant on the next block. Are there any good restaurants close to your place?

DAN: Unfortunately, there aren't any. But there is a big public park and a sports center just down the street. KIM; Wow! You're really lucky!

Answers

Kim says there are a lot of restaurants in her neighborhood: There's a (great) pizza place on the corner; and there's a good Chinese restaurant on the next block.

Dan says there aren't any good restaurants close to his place.

9. GRAMMAR FOCUS

A. Answers

- There are a lot/a few/none./There aren't many/any.
- 2. There's a lot/a little/none,/There isn't much/any.
- There are a lot/a few/none./There aren't many/any.
- There's a lot/a little/none./There isn't much/any.
- There are a lot/a few/none./There aren't many/any.

B. Answers

How much crime is there?

How many parks are there?

How much pollution is there?

How many restaurants are there?

How many schools are there?

How many stores are there?

11. READING

A. Possible answers

1. Mexico

Positive = modern cities; traditional Indian and Spanish influences; a central square; outdoor marketplaces; parks; a lot of excitement

Negative ≠ lots of traffic and air poliution

2. Japan

3. Australia

Positive = cities a mix of traditional and modern characteristics; little crime; many parks and gardens

Negative = houses are expensive; traffic, pollution, and crowds are problems

Positive ≈ cities not large; most people live in houses in suburbs - not apartments; suburbs usually have own churches, schools, shopping centers, and recreational facilities

Negative = suburbs often far from center of town; traffic slow; many traffic jams

Review of units 5-8

2 LISTTENING

A Audio script

DET DOBBS:(a knock on the door) Well, Frankie. How was your weekend?

FRANKIE: Oh, it's you, Detective. My weekend? What do you want to know about it?

DET. DOBBS: Now just tell the truth. What did you do at one P.M. on Saturday?

FRANKIE: Ah... one P.M... on Saturday? Well, oh. I remember! I watched a baseball game on TV. Yeah.

The Expos won, four to nothing, it was a great game! DET, DOBBS: OK... OK. What did you do at three P.M.?

FRANKIE: Ah... at three? Ah, yeah, I went to my karate class like I always do, every Saturday at three. DET. DOBBS: Karate, huh? Well, well... OK. And what did you do on Saturday at five P.M.?

FRANKIE: Ah, oh, yeah, ah, after karate, I visited some old friends of mine, Tom and Mary Kent, on Front Street.

DET. DOBBS: Yeah? Tom and Mary Kent. We'll talk to them. Now, Frankie, six o'clock. Where were you at six?

FRANKIE: Oooh! Gee... at six? Well, I went home at six... yeah... to clean the house.

DET. DOBBS: Yeah, yeah, so you cleaned the house. Now listen carefully, Frankie, What did you do at eight on Saturday night?

FRANKTE: Gee... at eight? Uh... oh, yeah... I remember now. I watched a terrific movie on TV! Yeah... it was great!

DET. DOBBS: Oh, you watched a movie on TV, did you? And what movie did you watch? What was the name of the movie, Frankie? Huh?

FRANKIE: The movie? The name of the movie? Uh, let me think a minute... it was a fantastic movie. DET. DOBBS: Really?

FRANKIE: No, wait! I remember, it was a... a... well, it was exciting...

DET. DOBBS: OK, OK, Frankie,...

FRANKIE: ... and I clearly remember that I went to bed at ten-thirty, uh, exactly... Yeah, I watched the movie, and I went to bed right after... ahem... the movie. Yeah, boy, I was tired... a long day, like I said. DET. DOBBS: Interesting. Very interesting, Frankie. Come on, Frankie, let's go down to the police station. FRANKIE: The police station? Me? Why me? I was at home on Saturday night!

DET DOBBS: Sure, Frankie, sure. (police siren)

Answers

B Answers

- 1. He went out after he cleaned the house.
- He went to the house that was robbed. He robbed the house. He came home at 10;30 P.M.

5 WHAT'S GOING ON?

A Audio script/Answers

Ss will hear four different sound effects, in this order:

- 1. Someone mixing a drink with ice cubes in a blender
- Someone taking a shower and singing.
- Someone vacuuming- a ring gets sucked into the vacuum
- Someone snoring, waking up, rolling over, and going back to sleep.

Unit 9

What does he look like?

1 WORD POWER

Possible answers

Height, rather short, very tall, 5'2" (or five feet two), around six feet

Age: in her/his teens/twenties/thirties, old Looks: cute, beautiful, ugly

Hair type/style: permed, medium length, a ponytail, frizzy, wavy

Hair color: blond, brunette, aubum, gray, white Other. Body type ≠ athletic, muscular, heavy, thin, slender; Eye color = black, brown, blue, green, gray, hazel

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- 1. How old is your brother?
- 2. How tall are you?
- 3. What color is Julia's hair?/What color hair does Julia have?
- 4. Does she wear glasses?
- 5. What does he look like?
- 6. What color are your eyes? What color eyes do you have?

4 WHO IS IT?

A Audio script

- WOMAN: I think Brian's good-looking. He's pretty tall, with dark brown hair and a mustache. He's about thirty.
- MAN: Tina's eighteen. She's got pretty red hair shoulder length and very curly - and she always wears interesting glasses, just for fun.
- WOMAN: Rosie is pretty tall for her age. She has long blond hair and wears contact lenses. She just turned ten.
- MAN: Tim's about twenty-three. He's fairly short and a bit heavy. He needs to lose some weight.
- WOMAN: Alice is very tall, and she's got long black hair. She's around twenty-five. Oh, and she's very slim. She locks like a fashion model.

106

Answers (as pictured from left to right)

2. 4. 1. 5. 3

B Audio script

SARAH: Let's see. Who else is here? Do you know Kevin Phillips? He's really nice.

RAOUL: No, I don't. Which one is he?

SARAH: He's over there. He's the one wearing white slacks and . . .

RAOUL: ... and a yellow polo shirt?

SARAH: That's right, And then there's Michiko Sasaki. She works with me at the office.

RAOUL: Oh? Which one is Michiko?

SARAH: Oh, Michiko's the very pretty woman in black pants and a green pullover sweater. She's wearing glasses

RAOUL: Oh, I see her. She's the one talking to Kevin, right?

SARAH: Uh-huh.

RAOUL: And who are those two people dancing?

SARAH: Oh, that's my best friend. Her name is Rosa, Rosa Ramirez. She's really nice.

RAOUL: Yeah, and she's very attractive in that ...

SARAH: Uh-huh, And she's dancing with John

DuPont, her new boyfriend.

RAOUL: John is Rosa's boyfriend?

SARAH: Yeah, Sorry, Raoul,

RAOUL: Oh! Gee, they're really good dancers, aren't they?

SARAH: Yeah, they are. Say, didn't you want to meet. Judy?

RAOUL: Uh, Sarah? I'm sorry, but which one is Judy again? (laughs)

Answers (as pictured from left to right)

Rosa, John, Michiko, Kevin

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- 1. Jim is the tall guy wearing glasses.
- Bob and Louise are the good-looking couple talking to Jim.
- 3. Lynne is the young woman in the T-shirt and jeans.
- Maria is the attractive woman sitting to the left of Carlos
- Tom is the serious-looking person listening to Maria

9 PRONUNCIATION

B Answers

- A: Is Rose the one sitting next to Kate?
 B: No, she's the one standing next to Kate
- 2. At is Brian the man on the couch?

 B: No. Brian's the man behind the couch.

10 READING

Possible answers (from left to right)

baggy jeans / tight black jeans brown cowboy boots black hiking boots / a red baseball cap /

a hat

a yellow jačket with sports logo 🗸

a brown jacket/blazer a blouse with cartoon character a flannel shirt /

UNIT 10

Have you ever ridden a camel?

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

BOX OFFICE: (phone rings; picks up) Thank you for calling the Saenger Theater. How can I help you?

TED: Um, what's playing tonight?

BOX OFFICE: Tonight is the final performance of *The Mousetrap*.

TED: The Mousetrap. That's a mystery, isn't it?

BOX OFFICE: Yes, it is.

TED: Great! Hove mysteries. And where are you located?

BOX OFFICE: We're at 143 North Rampart Street.

TED: How do you spell the street name?

BOX OFFICE: It's R-A-M-P-A-R-T.

TED: So that's 143 North Rampart Street, Oh! Do you still have tickets?

BOX OFFICE: Yes, we do.

TED: I'd like to reserve two tickets for tonight.

Answers

- 1. The Mousetrap is playing.
- 2. It's at 143 North Rampart Street.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Possible answers

- I've cleaned the house once/twice this week./l
 haven't cleaned the house this week.
- I've made my bed seven times/every day this week,/I haven't made my bed this week.
- 3. I've cooked dinner every day/four times this week./I haven't cooked dinner this week.
- I've done laundry once/twice this week./I haven't done laundry this week.
- I've washed the dishes every day/five times this week./I haven't washed the dishes this week.
- 6. I've gone grocery shopping once/twice this week./I haven't gone grocery shopping this week.

B Answers

- Yes, I've already been to aerobics class four times.
- 2. No, I haven't had the time.
- Actually, I haven't seen any yet.
- 4. No, I haven't gone to any parties for a while.
- 5. Yes, I've already made three calls.
- 6. I've eaten at fast-food restaurants a couple of times.

Answers

- A: Have you ever gone skiing?
 B: Yes, I have. I went skiing once in Colorado.
- A: Have you ever lost something valuable?
 B: No, I haven't. But my brother lost his camera on a trip once.

- 3. A: Have you ever gotten a traffic ticket? B: Yes, I have. Once I got a ticket and had to pay
- 4. A: Have you ever seen a body-building competition? B: Yes, I have, I saw the National Championships this year.
- 5. A: Have you ever been late for an important appointment?
 - B: No, I haven't. But my sister was 30 minutes late for her wedding!

7 LISTENING

Audio script

KARL: So, Clarice, what have you been up to lately? CLARICE: Oh, well . . . I tried a new restaurant last week. The Classical Cafe, Have you ever been there? KARL: No. I haven't. What's it like?

CLARICE: It's wonderful! The food is great, and the рисеs are reasonable. But the most interesting thing is the waiters. They sing!

KARL: The waiters sing? You're kidding! CLARICE: No, they're really terrific!

KARL: I've got to go there.

CLARICE: Yeah, you should, Karl. And what about you? Have you done anything interesting lately?

KARL: Oh, well, I went mountain climbing last month.

CLARICE: Really? I've never done that! KARL: Well, I was in Switzerland, . .

CLARICE: You went mountain climbing in Switzerland? KARL: Yeah, it was really exciting! Of course it was

dangerous, but I enjoyed it a lot. CLARICE: Wow! I'm impressed!

Answers

Clarice		wonderful; food great;
		prices reasonable;
Karl	moustain alimbias	waiters sing

mountain climbing really exciting in Switzerland

8 WORD POWER

A Answers

climb	a hill	a mountain
drink	goat's milk	rice wine
drive	a sports car	a truck
eat	kiwi fruit	raw fish
lose	your keys	your wallet
ride	a camel	a motorcycle

B Answers

climb/climbed; drink/drunk; drive/driven; eat/eaten; lose/ lost; ride/ridden

11 READING

Possible answers

	Sport	What they enjoy	The danger(s)
1. Jenny	gliding	flying like a bird	can lose control; landing difficult
2. Tom	mountain climbing	danger	lack of oxygen; tiredness; dehydration; storms, avalanches, strong winds

3. Ray

scuba pninolaxe diving another world

the bends (deat

UNIT 11

It's a very exciting city!

1 WORD POWER

A Answers

2. f 3. d 4. c 5. h 6. a 7.b 8.e

Possible answers

new/old good/bad near/far quiet/noisy fantastic/horrible warm/cool

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

LINDA: So, what kind of entertainment is there in Toronto? Is there a lot to do? KEN: Oh, sure! It's a very exciting city. There's wonderful theater and music. LINDA: Wow! Anything else?

KEN: Well, there are some pretty fun dance clubs and really terrific jazz clubs, too.

LINDA: Toronto sounds like a great place to visit!

Answer

He says there's wonderful theater and music. There are some pretty fun dance clubs and really terrific jaz

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

l.c 2. d 3. a 4. b

4 LISTENING

Audio script

1. WOMAN: So tell me about your hometown, Joyce. JOYCE: Well, it's a really small town WOMAN: What's it like there?

JOYCE: Oh, I think it's a very boring place. WOMAN: Really? Why?

JOYCE: Well, there's nothing to do. No good

restaurants. No nightlife of any kind.

WOMAN: Oh, that's too bad. But small towns are pretty inexpensive to live in.

JOYCE: Well, yeah, it is fairly cheap. And lots of people love it there because it's very pretty. WOMAN: Yeah?

JOYCE: Uh-huh. It has great scenery - lots of mountains and rivers, lakes, trees

WOMAN: Well, I don't know, Joyce. It sounds like a lovely place!

JOYCE: Well, yeah, if you like to go hiking in the summer and skiing in the winter. But, you know, I'm not the outdoors type! I'm a real city person.

2. WOMAN: Do you come from a big city, Nick? NICK: Yeah, I do. It's pretty big.

WOMAN: So there's a lot to do there? NICK: Oh, sure, it's a really fun place! It has some fantastic art museums and wonderful theaters and

terrific restaurants of all kinds. WOMAN: Uh . . . really? How are the prices? Is it expensive?

NICK: I guess so, Food costs a lot . . . both in the supermarket and in restaurants. And apartments! The rents are pretty high.

WOMAN: And what's it like there? What does it look like?

NICK: Well, it's very clean, and it's really pretty, too. There are lots of parks and trees right in the center. of the city.

Answers

	Big?	Interesting?	Expensive?	Beautiful?	
	Yes/No	Yes/No	Yes/No	Yes/No	
1. Joyce		✓	1	✓	
2. Nick	1	✓	1	✓	

8 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

MARIA: Where are you from again, David? DAVID: I'm from Miami, Florida.

MARIA: Oh! I've always wanted to visit Miami. What's it like? What can you do there?

DAVID: Well, there's a lot to do. But a visitor should definitely spend some time on the beach. The beaches there are beautiful.

- He's from Miami, Florida.
- You should spend some time on the beach.

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- 1 You should visit Paris
- 2. You can see the Eiffel Tower.
- 3. You should try French food.
- 4. You can go shopping at the flea markets.
- You shouldn't miss a boat ride on the Seine River.
- 6. You should spend a morning at the Louvre Museum.

11 LISTENING

A Audio script

- 1. MAN 1: Today, I'm going to speak about Japan. Japan has several major islands and a lot of smaller islands. The capital city is Tokyo. The highest mountain in Japan is called Mount Everest. There are many beautiful Buddhist temples and Shinto shrines there. Visitors should try Japanese food, especially sashimi, which is raw fish.
- WOMAN: Let me tell you about Argentina. Argentina is a country located in southeastern South America. It's a very large country. The capital city is Suenos Aires. The people all speak French. People visiting Buenos Aires shouldn't miss the downtown area, called the Plaza de Mayo. Many interesting people gather in this area.
- 3. MAN 2: Italy is a country in southern Europe, on the Atlantic Ocean. The country is shaped like a boot. And it's famous for its excellent food, especially pasta, Italy is also famous for its art, old buildings, and several beautiful cities - for example, the capital city of Rome.

Answers

Capital city Tokyo

Rome

see beautiful Buddhist temples and Shinto

What visitors...

shrines; eat Japanese fociti

2. Argentina Buenos Aires go to downtown area

eat Italian food; see art, old buildings, several beautiful cities

B Answers

1. Јарал

3. Italy

1 Incorrect The highest mountain in Japan is called Mount Everest. Correct The highest mountain in Japan is called

Mount Fuji.

incorrect The people all speak French. Correct The people all speak Spanish.

Incorrect Italy is . . . on the Atlantic Ocean. Correct: Italy is . . . on the Mediterranean Sea.

13 READING

A Answers

Venice

3. Rio de Janeiro Chicago

B Answers

Where is?	What is?	What should?
1. in northeastern	no roads, canais	see St. Mark's
Italy	gondolas	Square
2, in the Midwest	music, opera,	visit Magnificent
U.S.	theater,	Mile, John
	museums	Hancock Center
3. South America	Carnival; beaches	don't miss
and mountains		National Park of
		Tijuca

UNIT 12

It really works!

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

1. CRAIG: (coughs and sneezes) WOMAN: That cold sounds pretty bad, Craig! CRAIG: Yeah, it is. Don't get too close. WOMAN: Well, you know, it's important to drink a lot of liquids. I've got some herbal tea. Let me make you a cup.

CRAIG: Gee, that's nice of you! What kind of herbal tea is it?

WOMAN: I think it's ginseng. CRAIG: Oh, OK, That sounds good.

2. MAN; How's that cold, Craig? CRAIG: Not so good, I've still got it MAN: Oh, too bad. Well, listen, it's a good idea to take some cold medicine. And you should go home and take a long, hot bath. CRAIG: You're right, Maybe I should. Thanks for the advice.

Answer

The woman says it's important to drink a lot of liquids. The man says it's a good idea to take some cold medicine and Craig should go home and take a long. hot bath.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Possible answers

i. a, c, d, h, j

2. a, d, h, j

3. b, d, e, g, j

4. c, d, g, h, j

5. g. i

մ. d. g, h. j

7. b, f, h, j

8. c, d, g, h,j

6 WORD POWER

A Answers

1. a tube of ointment

2 a bottle of aspirin

3 a package of bandages

4. a can of foot spray

5. a box of tissues

B Possible answers

a bottle of vitamins/soda/ketchup/wine

a box of herbal tea/cereal/candy/cookies

a can of hair spray/soda/beer/paint/coffee/peas

a package of throat lozenges/gum/mints

a tube of toothpaste/lipstick/mascara/hand cream

7 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

MAN: Excuse me

PHARMACIST: Yes? How can I help you? MAN: Um, what do you suggest for a backache? PHARMACIST: Well, you should take some aspirin. And it s also a good idea to use a heating pad. MAN: Thanks. Oh, and where are the aspirin? PHARMACTST: They're in aisle five. Right over there. MAN: OK. Thanks again,

PHARMACIST: You're welcome.

Answer

He wants something for a backache.

B GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

1.A: Can/may I help you?

B: Yes. Can/Could/May I have something for tired

A: Sure. I suggest a bottle of eye drops.

2. A: What do you have/ suggest for sore muscles? B: You should have a tube of this cintment, It's

A: OK. I'll take it.

A: Can/Could/May I have a box of cold tablets, please?

B: Here you are

A: And what do you have/ suggest for insomnia? B: Try some of these sleeping pills.

A: OK, thanks.

9 LISTENING

Audio script

1. MAN: I think I've got a cold. My nose is stuffed up, and I have a sore throat.

PHARMACIST: You should take some vitamin C. MAN: OK. May I have a large bottle, please

2. WOMAN: What do you suggest for insect bites? PHARMACIST: Oh, this product is very good. And it comes in a can, so you just spray it on. I've tried it. It really works!

3. MAN: Excuse me, where are the tissues? PHARMACIST: They're right here on the counter. MAN: Thanks. I just need a couple of packages.

4. WOMAN: I've got a terrible stomachache! I think I ate too much last night. PHARMACIST: Here. Try these tablets. They work really fast, Just take two with a large glass of water.

Answers

1. < a large bottle of vitamins

2. / a can of spray for insect bites

It two small packages of tissues.

✓ a box of antacid tablets

12 READING A Answers

1. colds

insomnia

3. bee stings and insect bites

4. headaches

5. burns

6. coughs

Review of units 9-12

3 WHICH ONE IS BILL?

Possible answers

Bill is the man in the black shirt./Bill is the one sitting next to Louisa.

Kate is the woman in the jeans./Kate is the one standing next to the window.

Louisa is the woman with the blond hair/Louisa is the one sitting next to Bill.

Robert is the man with the black hair./Robert is the one wearing glasses.

Maggie is the woman in the white blouse./Maggie is the one talking to Robert.

4 LISTENING

Audio script

MAN: So, you're from Hawaii, Jenny. JENNY: That's right.

MAN: Where in Hawaii?

JENNY: I'm from Honolulu - on the island of Oahu. MAN: Wow! Honolulu! That's a fairly big city, isn't it?

JENNY: No, not really, it's not too big.

MAN: The weather is great, though, Right?

JENNY: Oh, yes. It is. It's very comfortable the whole year. Warm, but not too hot.

MAN: I've heard that Honolulu is an expensive city, Is that true?

JENNY: Well, yes, it is fairly expensive. Rents are high, and food is expensive, too. That's because everything comes in by plane from the mainland. MAN: And what are some places to see there? JENNY: Well, Waikiki Beach is probably the most famous place. That's where all the tourists go. MAN: Oh, yes, I've heard of Waikiki Beach.

Answers

What she says about ...

1. size

3. prices

not too big

2 weather

very comfortable the whole

year; warm, but not too hot fairly expensive; rents high,

food expensive

4. a famous place

Waikiki Beach, where all the

tourists go

Unit 13

May I take your order, please?

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

SANDY: So, do you want to eat early or late? BOB: Let's eat early. Then maybe we can go to a movie after dinner.

SANDY Good idea! Why don't we have dinner around six o'clock?

BOB: Six is good. And where do you want to meet? SANDY: Let's meet at the restaurant, OK? BOB: Yeah, that's fine with me.

Answers

1. They decide to meet at 6:00 because then maybe they can go to a movie after dinner.

2. They decide to meet at the restaurant.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. Neither am L/I'm not either.
- 2. So can I./I can, too,
- So do I./I do, too.
- 4. Neither can I./I can't either.
- 5. Neither do I./I don't either.
- 6. So am I./I am, too.
- 7. So am I./I am, too.
- 8. Neither do I./I don't either.
- 9. So do 1./l do, too.
- 10. Neither can I./I can't either.

5 WORD POWER

B Answers (extra examples in boldface)

Soups Main dishes Beverages onion soup grilled salmon iced tea chicken broth hamburger & fries milk clam chowder roast turkey coffee gazpacho steak soda minestrone fried chicken Juice

Salads Desserts
cole sla apple pie
cold pasta saladchocolate cake
mixed greens ice cream
Caesar salad
spinach salad cookies

C Audio script

1. MAN: What's your favorite food, Jenny?

JENNY: Oh, that's easy - hamburgers and french fries.

MAN: Is that all?

JENNY; Well I also like chocolate ice cream. MAN: Chocolate ice cream. Really!

2. WOMAN: What kind of food do you like best, 8renda?

BRENDA: Well, one of my favorites is a big mixed green salad if also like vegetable soup, if eat lots of vegetables. They're very good for you, you know.

- MAN: What's your favorite kind of food, Grant?
 GRANT: Oh, my favorite is pasta. Hove Italian food.
 Lalso like seafood. My favorite fish is grilled salmon Mmm.
- 4. WOMAN: What are your favorite foods, Mr. and Mrs. Dobson?

MRS. DOBSON: Well, we like tairly simple things. My favorite is chicken. Hike baked chicken with potatoes.

MR. DOBSON: And my favorite is roast turkey

Answers:

- 1. hamburgers and french fries, chocolate ice cream
- mixed green salad, vegetable soup.
- pasta, seafood (grilled salmon)
- Mrs. Dobson: baked chicken with potatoes
 Mr. Dobson: roast turkey

7 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

WAITRESS: What would you like to order? CUSTOMER: I'll have the tried bricken. WAITRESS: Would you like rice or potatoes?

CUSTOMER: Potatoes, please.

WAITRESS: What kind of potatoes would you like?

Mashed, baked, or french fries? CUSTOMER: I'd like french fries.

WAITRESS: OK. And what will you have to drink? CUSTOMER: I guess I'll have a cup of coffee.

WAITRESS: Would you like anything else? CUSTOMER: No, that will be all for now, thanks.

WAITRESS: Would you like dessert?

CUSTOMER: Yes, I'd like ice cream. WAITRESS: What flavor would you like?

CUSTOMER: Hmm. I'll have chocolate, please.

WAITRESS: OK. I'll bring it right away

9 LISTENING

A Audio script

WAITER: Hi. May I take your order? TOM: Yes, I'll have a cup of coffee. WAITER: Cream and sugar?

TOM: Oh, yes, please. WAITER: And you?

TINA: I'd like a chicken sandwich. And I'll have some chips ... oh, you call them french fries here. (laughs)

Right. I'll have some french fries, please.

WAITER: All right. One coffee with cream and sugar and a chicken sandwich with french fries. Uh, anything else?

TTNA: Yes, I'd like an iced tea, please. WAITER: One iced tea. Thank you.

TOM: Oh, wait a minute! What kind of desserts do you have?

WAITER: Well, we have pie, cake, ice cream,

chocolate mousse . .

TOM: Occo! What kind of pie do you have?

WAITER: I think today we have apple, cherry, lemon... TOM: Hmm . . ., I think I'll have a piece of apple pie with my coffee. How about you, Tina?

TINA: Oh, maybe I'll have a piece later...or....!!! have some of yours! (laughs)

WAITER: Then it's one coffee, one apple pie, one chicken sandwich, an order of french fries, and an iced tea. Right?

TOM: Yes, thank you.

TINA: Thanks.

Answers

Tom's order: coffee with cream and sugar, a piece of apple pie

Tina's order: a chicken sandwich, french fries, iced

B Audio script

TINA: Oh, here comes our waiter! TOM: Yeah, I wondered what took so long. WAITER: (rushing to table) Whew! Here you are! TINA: Uh, I ordered french fries with my chicken sandwich, and you brought me ... ugh! ... mashed potatoes with gravy!

WAITER: Oh, you ordered french fries?

TINA: Yas!

WAITER: Well, then, OK.

TOM: Uh, and could I have the apple pie I ordered? WAITER: What apple pie? Did you order apple pie?

TOM: Uh-huh. Yeah, I did... with my coffee.

Remember?

WAITER: Really? Gee, how did I forget that?

TINA: Uh, can I ask you a question?

WAITER: Yes?

TINA: How long have you been a waiter?

WAITER: Who, me? Oh, uh, today is my first day, (all laugh) Well, I'll ... I'll get your apple pie and the french fries right away. Sorry about that,

TOM: Oh, that's OK.

TINA: Yeah, thanks, Good luck!

WAITER: Thanks!

Possible answer

Tina ordered french fries, but the waiter brought mashed potatoes with gravy. Tom ordered apple pie. but the waiter forgot to bring it. Tina asked, "How long have you been a waiter?" because he made two mistakes with their orders. He said it was his first day. They all laughed about it.

11 READING

A Answers

- 1. takes your bag at an airport? \$1,00 parks your car at a hotel or restaurant? \$1,00 serves you in a fast-food restaurant? nothing
- 2. a \$27 haircut? \$2.70-\$5,40 a \$50 restaurant check? \$5.00-\$10.00 a \$14 taxi fare? \$1.40-\$2.80

UNIT 14

The biggest and the best!

1 WORD POWER

A Answers

1. swamp 2. plateau 3. ocean 4 waterfall

B. Answers

- canyon, cliff, valley
- 2. lake, plateau, nver
- 3. hill, mountain, volcano
- 4. desert, forest, waterfali

Possible answers

Water-related terms: stream, creek, inlet, bay, pond, tide, waves

Land-related terms: continent, island, peninsula, rain forest, savanna

Climate-related terms: weather, climate, rain, storm, wind, snow, dry, wet, humid

Other terms: flora, fauna, city, town, village

C Possible answers

Mountains: Aconcagua, Fujiyama, Kilimanjaro Rivers: the Danube, the Huang, the Mississippi River Continents: Antarctica, Asia, Australia, Europe, North America, South America

Oceans: the Arctic Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Indian Ocean

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- 1. Which country is smaller, Monaco or Vatican City?
- 2. Which waterfall is higher, Niagara Falls or Angel Falls?
- 3. Which city is more crowded, Hong Kong or Cairo?
- 4. Which take is larger, the Caspian Sea or Lake Superior?
- Which mountain is the tallest: Mount McKinley, Mount Everest, or Fujiyama?
- What is the longest river in the world, the Nile or the Amazon?
- 7. Which country is the most popular with tourists: Spain, France, or Italy?
- 8. What is the deepest ocean in the world, the Pacific or the Atlantic?

7 LISTENING

Audio script

HOSTESS: (music and applause) Our contestants this evening are Jack, Susan, and Jonathan. And now, contestants, let's get right to our first question. Question number one: Which is the oldest: the Statue of Liberty, the Eiffel Tower, or the Empire State Building? (buzzer) Jack?

JACK: The Statue of Liberty is the oldest. They built it in 1886. They didn't build the Eiffel Tower until 1889, and the Empire State Building until 1931.

HOSTESS: That's correct! (applause) Question number two: Is a Concorde airplane bigger than a 747 or DC-10 airplane? (buzzer) Susan.

- SUSAN: No, a 747 is the biggest. It carries up to five hundred people; the Concorde only carries about a hundred passengers, and a DC-10 about 300 people.
- HOSTESS: That's right! (applause) Question number three: Which is the heaviest: a pound of gold, a pound of butter, or a pound of feathers? (buzzer) Jonathan.

JONATHAN: They all weigh the same.

HOSTESS: Yes! (applause) Question number four: Which country is the largest: the U.S., China, or Canada? (pause) Nobody knows? Does anybody want to guess? (buzzer) Jack.

JACK: Uh . . . China is the targest. (gong and audience sighs)

HOSTESS: No, sorry! JACK: Oh, shoot!

HOSTESS: (buzzer) Jonathan. JONATHAN: Canada is the largest.

HOSTESS: Correct! (applause) Question number five: Which is the biggest city: Moscow, New York, or Shanghai? (buzzer) Susan.

SUSAN: New York is the biggest. It has over 14 million people. Shanghai has about 13 million, and Moscow has about 10.

HOSTESS: Correct! (applause) Question number six: Which is the smallest: Australia, Argentina, or Brazil? (buzzer) Susan.

SUSAN: Argentina is the smallest.

HOSTESS: That's right! (applause and music) OK contestants, the winner is ... (fade)

Answers

1 the Statue of Liberty

4. Canada

2.747

5. New York

3, gold, butter, and feathers

6. Argentina

9 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

PAUL: Tell me a little more about New Zealand, Kelly. KELLY: Well, it has some great beaches. There are some excellent beaches in the North Island for surfing. PAUL: Well, I don't really like surfing, but I love boating. KELLY: Really? Well, you can go boating in Auckland. It's one of the most popular places for sailing. And you should definitely try jet boating in the South Island. PAUL: Oh, I'd love to do that! It sounds pretty exciting. KELLY: It is. And there's good skiing in New Zealand in the winter, too. Lots of people go there to ski. PAUL: It sounds too good to pass up, Now I have to go! KELLY: Yes, you do!

Possible answers

New Zealand is famous for some great beaches; there are excellent beaches in the North Island for surfing; Auckland is very popular for beating and sailing; you can try jet beating in the South Island; and there's good skiing in the winter.

10 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- How high is Angel Falls?
- 2. How big is California?
- 3. How long is the Nile?
- 4. How hot is Washington, D.C., in the summer?

11 READING

A Possible answers

1-3. Ss' answers will vary.

4. Possible answers may include: Don't buy products that aren't recyclable or made by companies that are known to pollute the environment. Plant trees instead of cutting them down. Continue to read and study about how people can recycle things and protect the environment. Turn off lights and appliances that are not being used to save electricity. Don't leave the water on when brushing your teeth. Wear heavy clothes inside when it's cold outside and light clothes when it's hot outside so you don't have to use heat and air conditioning.

B. Possible answers

Photos that show environmental problems \pm 1, 3, 5, 7 Photos that show solutions \pm 2, 4, 6, 8

- Wrong: car exhaust polluting air; noisy cars causing noise pollution
- Right: bicycling to work saves gas; prevents pollution
- 3. Wrong: throwing away too many recyclable items
- Right: recycling aluminum cans, which can be made into new cans and used again
- Wrong: wasting electricity, gas, or coal to heat or cool a house too much
- 6. Right: saving electricity with low-energy bulbs.
- 7. Wrong: leaky faucets waste water
- 8. Right: using efficient shower head will save water

UNIT 15

rm going to see a musical

2 CONVERSATION

Audio script

ANNA: So, what musical are we going to see?

TONY: It's called Cats.

ANNA: Oh, sure. Cats. I've heard a fot about it. When does it start?

TONY: It starts at eight. Maybe we can have a pizza before the show.

ANNA: OK. Great!

TONY: Should I pick you up at your house?

ANNA: Well, I'll be in the city tomorrow atternoon, so let's meet near the theater.

TONY: OK, Do you want to meet in front of the Pizza Palace on State Street? At a quarter to seven? ANNA: A quarter to seven at the Pizza Palace? Great!

Answers

- 1. Cats.
- 2. Having a pizza.
- 3. In front of the Pizza Palace on State Street,
- 4. At a quarter to seven.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

 What are you doing tomorrow? Would you like to go out?

- 2. Are you doing anything on Saturday night? Do you want to see a movie?
- We're having friends over for a barbecue on Sunday. Would you and your parents like to come?
- a. Well, my father's going to visit my brother at college. But my mother and I are going to be home. We'd love to come!
- b. Sorry, I can't. I'm going to work overtime. How about Saturday?
- c. Can we go to a late show? I'm going to stay at the office till 7:00. After that I'm going to go to the gym.

B Answers

I.Ь 2.c

4 WORD POWER

Answers (extra examples in boldface)

Exhibitions Friendly gatherings art show barbecue carshow beach party craft fair pienie dog show dinner party fashion show card game Spectator sports Live performances

baseball game

comedy act play

hockey game tennis tournament

rock concert

football game soccer match ballet орега

7 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- Could you tell Kim the movie is at 7:00?
- 2. Would you ask Mike to pick me up at home around 4:00?
- Please tell Maria (that) the concert on Saturday is
- Could you ask Jim to bring the tickets for the hockey game tonight?
- 5. Would you tell Ann (that) the museum opens at 10:00 tomorrow morning?
- 6. Please ask Alex to meet us in front of the cafeteria at 12:15.

10 LISTENING

Audio script

1. RECEPTIONIST: (phone rings) Good afternoon, MBI, May I help you?

MRS. PARIS: Hello, I want to speak to Mr. Kim, please.

RECEPTIONIST: I'm sorry. Mr. Kim is in a meeting right now Would you like to leave a message? MRS. PARIS: Yes, please. This is Mrs. Paris... of City Car Center.

RECEPTIONIST: Mrs. Paris, Is that P-A-R-I-S? MRS. PARIS: Yes, that's right. Please ask him to call me at the City Car Center before three-thirty this afternoon. It's very important.

RECEPTIONIST: All right. And your number, please? MRS. PARIS: Five-five-four, three-two-nine-zero. RECEPTIONIST: Five-five-four, three-two-nine-oh? MRS. PARIS: That's it.

RECEPTIONIST: OK, I'll ask him to call you before three thirty, Mrs. Paris.

MRS. PARIS: Thank you. Good-bye. RECEPTIONTST: Good-bye. (hangs up)

2. RECEPTIONIST: (phone rings) This is Software Systems, Good morning.

SANDY: Good morning, May I speak to Ms. Carson.

RECEPTIONIST: Hmm... do you mean Mrs. Carter? SANDY: No, Carson, Ms. Wendy Carson. She's new

RECEPTIONIST: Let me check. Oh, yes, let me try to connect you. Hold on. (phone rings) I'm sorry. There's no answer. May I take a message? SANDY: Yes. Would you please ask her to call

Sandy at First National Bank?

RECEPTIONIST: Sandy .. at First National Bank ... SANDY: The number is four-six-two, one-one-

eightseven, extension three-one-three.

RECEPTIONIST: Four-six-two, eleven eighty-seven ... extension three-one-three?

SANDY: That s right,

RECEPTIONIST: OK,I'll give her the message.

SANDY: Thanks so much, Bye.

RECEPTIONIST: Good-bye. (hangs up)

Possible answers

1 To: Mr Kim

From: Mrs. Paris of City Car Center Phone 554-3290

Message Call Mrs. Paris before 3:30 this afternoon. Very important!

To: Wendy Carson

From: Sandy

of: First National Bank Phone: 462-1187 ext. 313

Message: Call her

12 READING

A Answers (sentences that should be checked) 2, 4, 7, 8

UNIT 16

A change for the better

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

DIANE: And how about you, Brian? What have you

BRIAN: Well, I moved away - to San Francisco, I'm just back here on some business today.

DIANE: Oh, you have a new job?

BRIAN: Yes, I work for a travel agency now.

DIANE: Really? How do you like it?

BRIAN: The work is wonderful! And my salary is much better than before.

DIANE: That's great! You look different, too. BRIAN: Well, I've grown a mustache.

DIANE: That's what it is! It looks good on you. BRIAN: (laughs) Thanks, Diane. You always were generous with the compliments.

Possible answer

He moved away - to San Francisco; he has a new job in a travel agency; the work is wonderful, and his salary is much better than before; he's grown a mustache.

4 LISTENING

Audio script

LINDA: What are you looking at, Scott? SCOTT: Oh, just one of our photo albums. LINDA: Oh, look - it's our wedding picture! SCOTT: Yeah. Just think, we'll be celebrating our fifth wedding anniversary this month.

LINDA: Yeah, and I remember I couldn't stand you when we first met. But a year later, we fell in love and got married.

SCOTT: And here's a picture of our honeymoon. Wow! We sure look different now, don't we? LINDA: Yes! My hair is much shorter now. And you've gained a little weight. You were always too thin! Oh, and look, here's a picture of the day we brought Maggie home from the hospital.

SCOTT: She's adorable. And now we have two kids! Who would have guessed?

LINDA: Yeah. We're just lucky that they look like me!

Answers

Changes

Her hair is (much) shorter. He's gained (a little) weight.

They have two kids now.

6 CONVERSATION

B Answers (extra examples in holdface)

- Titlette (extra examples in boloides)					
Health	Appearance	Skills/Abilities			
do aerobics	cut my hair	learn to swim			
eat more	short	learn to type			
vegetables	eat less meat	speak English			
get up early	grow a beard	start cooking			
quit smoking	wear contact	take music/art			
	lenses	lessons			

take vitamins

eat less meat let my hair grow long gain/lose weight

read more

Audio script

SUSAN: What kind of job are you looking for? ALEX: Well, I've thought a lot about it, and I'd like to do computer programming. So I hope to get a job with a big computer company.

SUSAN: Hey, that sounds really interesting. ALEX: Yeah, I've got an interview next week,

SUSAN: Well, good luck!

ALEX: And where do you plan to travel to, Susan? SUSAN: Well, I'd like to travel around the United States a bit. There are so many beautiful places that I've never seen.

ALEX: Well, please send me lots of postcards while you're away.

SUSAN: All right, I will! And I hope you get the job! ALEX: Me, too!

Answers

- He wants to doccomputer programming (with a big. computer company).
- She'd like to travel around the United States.

7 GRAMMAR FOCUS

B Possible answers (Accept as correct any answer that is logical and grammatically correct.)

- 1. I'm (not) going to move to a new city.
- 2. I (don't) plan to get married.
- I (don't) want to have a large family.
- I hope to find a job where I can travel.
- I'd love to make a lot of money!
- I'd like to become very successful.
- 7. I'd love to retire at an early age.

8-10. Ss' answers will vary.

11. LISTENING

A Audio script

1. MAN: So, what are your plans, Charlie? Are you thinking much about the future?

CHARLIE: Hmm, not really, I don't like to make plans. Oh, except for one thing.

MAN: What's that?

CHARLIE: I'm saving up for a new car. I really want to get a sports car.

MAN: A sports car?

CHARLIE: (laughs) Yeah, I'd love to get a Trans

MAN: Yeah, (laughs) who wouldn't?

2. WOMAN: Do you have plans for the future, Leon? LEON: Yeah, I do! I really want to open my own. business. So right now I'm taking a course on running a small business.

WOMAN: What kind of business?

LEON: Oh, maybe a sports shop, or something like that. You know I love sports. But I want to do it on my own. I don't want to get a big loan from a bank. So I guess it's going to take me a while. WOMAN: Yeah, but it's going to be worth it! Good

3. WOMAN: Any big plans for the future, Marie? Would you like to get married soon? MARIE: (laughs) Oh, no, definitely not. That's one thing I don't plan to do for a while. I want to save my money for the next few years and buy myself a little house. I'm really tired of living with my parents. WOMAN: Oh, yeah! I know what you mean. Well, let me know if you need a roommate once you get your own place!

MARIE: (Jaughs) OK, I will.

Possible answers

LOSSIDIE	4113WC13	
	Plans to	Doesn't want to
1. Charlie	get a sports car	
2. Leon	open own business	get a big loan
	on his own	from a bank
3. Marie	save her money for	get married soon
	the next few years	or live with
	and buy a house	parents

12 READING

A Answers

Interests Goals 1. Balamurati medicine wanted to be a doctor by 17; plans to get advanced training in **Boston**

2. Catherine would like to design engineering,

music concert halls or manufacture pianos wants to go to a top university; would like

to be a lawyer

paper, food

the school collections

Review of units 13-16

2 LISTENING

Audio script

3. Jasmin

- 1. MAN: Could I have a table for two, please?
- 2. WOMAN: Can I get you anything to drink?
- 3. WOMAN: What would you like for dinner?
- 4. MAN: What kind of dressing would you like?
- 5. WOMAN: What vegetable would you like?
- 6. MAN: Would you like dessert?

Answers

- 1. Yes, this way, please.
- Yes, I'll have tea, please.
- 3. I'd like a steak, please:
- 4. Italian, please.
- Carrots, please.
- 6. No. I don't think so.

Interchance activities

INTERCHANGE 9

- In picture 1, Dave's T-shirt is white. In picture 2,it's
- In picture 1, Ann has long hair and she's standing. In picture 2, she has short hair and she's sitting.
- In picture 1, Nick isn't wearing glasses. In picture 2, he
- In picture 1, Kevin has a beard and mustache. In picture he doesn't.
- In picture 1, Fay is sitting and has straight brown hair. In picture 2, she's standing and holding a drink, and she has curty red hair.
- In picture 1, Kate's sweater is purple. In picture 2, it's огалде.

INTERCHANGE 14

Answers

1. gold

7. a lifer of wine

2. Pluto

Egypt

3. Jupiter

9. Colombia

4. a tortoise

10. an octagon

5. a giraffe

11. a mile

6. the liver

12, the Dark Ages

Workbook Answer Key

Unit 1

Please call me Chuck.

Exercise 1

Answers will vary.

Exercise 2

Α

2. M James 3. F Catherine

5. M Robert 6. F Susan

7. M William

8. F Jennifer

4. F Elizabeth

b. 3 Kate

d. 2 Jim

f. 1 Joa g. 6 Sue

h. 7 Bill

c. 8. Jenny e. 4 Liz

С

2. Kate

Michael Charles Kennedy

4. Smith

Exercise 3

2. A: My name is Jim Holmes.

B: Nice to meet you, Mr. Holmes.

3. A: This is Jenny Parker.

B: Nice to meet you. Ms. Parker.

4. A. Hello, I'm William Dean, Please call me Bill.

B: Pleased to meet you. Bill.

5. Excuse me, what's your name again?

B: Joe King.

6. A: How do you spell your first name?

B: C-H-A-R-L-E-N-E.

Exercise 4

JiM: What's your last name?
 BOB: My last name's Hayes.

3. JIM: Who's that?

BOB: That's my wife.

4. JIM: What's her name? BOB: Her name is Rosa.

JIM: Where's she from?BOB: She's from Mexico.

6. JIM: Who are they?

Exercise 5

2. We're students. Our classroom number is 108-C.

3. Excuse me. What's your last name again?

4. That's Mr. Kim. He is in my class.

BOB: They're my wife's parents.

5. My name is Elizabeth. Please call me Liz.

6. This is Paul's wife. Her name is Jennifer.

7. My parents are on vacation. They are in South Korea

8. I'm from Venice, Italy. It is a beautiful city.

Exercise 6

AMY: Oh. they <u>are</u> on the volleyball team. Let the introduce you. Hi, Surachai, this <u>is</u> Lisa Neil. SURACHAI: Pleased to meet you, Lisa. USA: Nice to meet you, too, Surachai, Where <u>are</u> you trom?

SURACHAI: I am from Thailand.

AMY: And this is Mario. He is from Brazil

USA: Hi, Mario.

PABLO: And my name is Pablo. I am from Colombia.

Exercise 7

Α

Answers will vary.

В

(Note: Words in italics were given as examples.)

Name Where from Languages Sports
1 Mario Cali, Colombia Spanish and volleyball

2 Eileen Mozambique, Swahili and Africa Portuguese

Africa Portuguese
3. Su Yin Taiwan Mandarin volleybail
Chinese and

English

 Ahmed Luxor, Egypt Arabic and baseball English

Exercise 8

SARAH: Pretty good, thanks. Are you a student here? RICH: No. I'm not, I'm on vacation. Are you a student? SARAH: Yes, I am.

RICH: And what are you studying?

SARAH: I'm studying Spanish.

RICH: Oh, really? Is Susan Miller in your class?

SARAH: Yes, she is, is she your friend? RICH: No, she's not, She's my sister.

Exercise 9

TINA: Hi. I'm Tina Fernandez.

AMY: Are you from South America, Tina?

TINA: Yes, <u>1 am</u>. <u>I'm</u> from Argentina. Where are you and your sister from, Alex?

ALEX: We're from Taiwan. TINA: Are you from Taipei?

ALEX: No, we're not. We're from Taiwan. Say, are you in English 101?

TINA: No, i'm not i'm in English 102.

Exercise 10

2. A: Are you from Spain?

B: No, we're not from Spain. We're from Mexico.

3. A: Are they on the same baseball team?

B: No, they're not on the same baseball team. They're on the same volleball team.

A: Are Kim and Mika in your class?
 B: Yes, Kim and Mika are in my class.

A: Is it a nice class?
 B: Yes, it's a nice class.

6. A: Is your teacher Mr. Brown?

B: No, my teacher isn't Mr. Brown. I'm in Ms. West's class.

Exercise 11

1. How are you?
2. See you later.
3. Take care.
4. How's everything?
5. Good evening.
6. Good night.
Saying "hello"
Saying "hello"
Saying "hello"
Saying "goodbye"

Exercise 12.

Answers will vary.

Unit 2

How do you spend your day?

Exercise 1

- 2. disc jockey
- 3. word processor
- 3. police officer
- 5. security guard
- tour guide

Exercise 2

- She works in a travel agency and takes people on tours. She's a tour guide.
- He works in an office. He's a word processor. He likes computers a lot.
- She's a disc jockey. She works in a night club. She plays music.

Exercise 3

- She works for a travel company and arranges tours. She's a travel agent.
- He has <u>an</u> interesting job. He's <u>a</u> teacher. He works in <u>a</u> high school.
- She's an architect. She works for a large company.
 She builds houses, it's a great job.
- She works with computers in an office. She's a word processor. She's also a parttime student. She takes an English class in the evening.

Exercise 3

TOM: What does your husband do exactly?

LIZ: He works for a department store. He's a store manager.

TOM: How does he like it?

LIZ: It's an interesting job. He <u>likes</u> it very much. But he <u>works</u> long hours. And what <u>do</u> you <u>do</u>?

TOM: I'm a student. I study architecture.

LIZ: Oh, really? Where do you go to school?

TOM: I go to Lincoln University. My wife, Jenny, goes there, too.

LIZ: Realty? And what does she study?

TOM: She studies hotel management.

LIZ: That sounds interesting.

Exercise 5

VICTOR: I work for American Express. MARK: And what do you do there?

VICTOR: I'm in management.

MARK: How do you like it?

VICTOR: It's a great job. And what do you do?

MARK: I'm a salesperson

VICTOR: Really? What do you sell?

MARK: I sell computers. Do you want to buy one?

Exercise 6

- 1. He's a chef.
- 2. He makes TV programs about Chinese cooking.
- 3. She finishes at eight or nine o'clock in the evening.
- She's an electrician,

Exercise 7

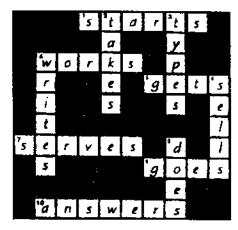
Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. Where does he work?
- 3. What does he do exactly?
- 4. How does he like his job?

Exercise 9

Everyone knows Pat at the hospital. Pat is a part-time hight nurse. He cares for students at night. *On* Saturdays and Sundays. Pat sleeps most of the day and wakes up a little <u>before</u> nine in the evening, usually at 8:45 or 8:50. He has breakfast very late, <u>around</u> 9:30 or 10:00 P.M.! He watches television <u>until</u> eleven o'clock, and then starts work <u>at</u> midnight. <u>Early</u> in the morning, usually around 5 A.M., he leaves work, has a little snack, goes home, goes to bed, and sleeps <u>late</u>. It's a hard schedule, but he loves his work.

Exercise 9



Exercise 10

- 2 What does he do?
- 3. She serves food in a restaurant.
- 4. He goes to the university
- 5. She stays up late.
- 6. He works part time.

Exercise 11

- 1. New York Hospital need <u>nurses</u>. Work during the day or <u>at night</u>, weekdays or <u>weekends</u>, full time or part time. Call 278-1011.
- Interesting job for language student. Mornings only.
 Take people on tours. Need good English and Spanish. Call 989-3239.
- 3 No need to work long hours! Only work from 6:00 until 11:00, four evenings a week. Our restaurant serves great food! Work as our manager. Call 735-6845.

Unit 3

How much is it?

Exercise 1

SAM: The light blue ones over there, They're nice.
REBECCA: Yes. But I don't really like light blue.
SAM: Hmm. Well, what about that sweater? It's perfect for you

REBECCA: Which one?

SAM: This red one.

REBECCA: Well, I like it, but it's expensive. SAM: Hey, let me buy it for you. It's a present!

REBECCA: Oh. Sam. Thank you very much.

Exercise 2

- A: How much are those bracelets?
 B: They're \$29.
- 3. A. How much are these shoes? B: They're \$64.
- 4. A: How much is that dog?

B: That's' my dog, and he's not for sale!

Exercise 3

1 backpacks5. gloves9. scarves2. bookshelves6. hairbrushes10. sweaters3. dresses7. necklaces11. ties4. companies8. rings12. dishes

Exercise 4

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. That's cheap.
- 3. That's pretty expensive!
- 4. That's reasonable.
- That's not bad.
- That's cheap.

Exercise 5

1. CLERK: It's \$195.

LU(S: And how much is that one?

CLERK: It's \$255.

LUIS: Oh, really? Well, thanks, anyway

2. KIM: Excuse me. How much are those jeans?

CLERK: They're only \$59.

KIM: And how much is this sweater?

CLERK: Which one? They're all different.

KIM: Hike this green one.

CLERK: It's \$34,

KIM: Well, that's not bad.

3. SONIA: I like those sunglasses over there.

CLERK: Which ones?

SOMA: The small brown ones.

CLERK: They're \$199.

SONIA: Oh, they're expensive!

Exercise 6

Cotton pants gloves shirt iacket	Gold bracelet ring neckłace	- :	shirt	boots bracelet ring	shirt
acket		jackét [.]	jacket	necklace	jacke

Exercise 7

A: These cotton gloves are nice.

B: Yes, but the leather ones are nicer.

A. They're also more expensive.

A: Those silk jackets look more attractive than the wool ones.

B: Yes, but the wool ones are warmer.

3. A: This purple shirt is an interesting color.

B: Yes, but the color is prettier than the design.

A: The design isn't bad.

B: I think the design on that red shirt is better than the design on this purple one.

4 A: Hey, look at this gold ring! It's nice. And it's cheaper than that silver ring.

B: But it's smaller than the silver one.

A: Well, yeah. The silver one is bigger than the gold one. But look at the price tag. One thousand dollars is a lot of money for a ring!

Exercise 8

Clothing Electronics Jewelry
cap computer bracelet
dress compact disc player earnings
athletic shoes television necklace
sweater laptop computer ring

Exercise 9

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

2. Which cap do you like more, the wool one or the leather one?

i like the wool one more. or i like the leather one more.

3. Which ones do you like more, the high-tops or the tennis shoes?

Llike the high-tops more, or t like the tennis shoes more.

Which one do you prefer, the laptop computer or the desktop computer?

I prefer the laptop computer, or I prefer the desktop computer.

5. Which television do you like better the 19-inch one or the 25-inch one?

Hike the 19-inch one better, or Hike the 25-inch one better.

Exercise 10

Α

1. d 3.a 2. c 4. b

В

1. Faise 3. True

2. True 4. True

С

Answers will yary.

Unit 4

Do you like jazz?

Exercise 1

Answers will vary.

Exercise 2

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- Do you like Tom Cruise? Yes, I do. I love him.
- 3. Do you like rap? No, I don't, I can't stand it.
- 4. Do you like Demi Moore? Yes, I do. I like her a lot.
- 5. Do you like TV game shows? No, I don't I can't stand them.
- Do you like soap operas? No, I don't, I don't like them very much.

Exercise 3

- 1. Mariah Carey is a pop singer.
- 2. The Rolling Stones are a rock group.
- 3. Oprah Winfrey is a TV talk show host.
- 4. Bruce Willis is an actor

Exercise 4

1. SARAH: Yes, I <u>like</u> it a lot. I'm a real fan of Garth Brooks,

ED: Oh, does he play the guitar?

SARAH: Yes, he does. He's my favorite musician.

2. ANNE: What kind of music <u>do</u> your parents like, Jason?

JASON: They like classical music.

ANNE: Who do they like? Mozart? JASON: No, they don't like him very much. They prefer Beethoven.

SCOTT: Teresa, do you like Mariah Carey? TERESA: No, I don't. I can't stand her, i like Celine

SCOTT: I don't know her. What kind of music does she sing?

TERESA: She sings pop songs. She's really great!

Exercise 5

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- What kinds of movies do you like? t like comedies and musicals.
- 2. What is your favorite movie? My favorite movie is Star Wars.
- 3. What kind/kinds of TV shows do you like? I like game shows.
- 4. Who is your favorite TV actor or actress? My favorite TV actor is Michael J. Fox.
- 5. What is your favorite song? My favorite song is "Let it Be."
- 6. Who is your favorite rock group? My favorite rock group is U2.

Exercise 6

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

2. Which movies are more interesting, thrillers or science fiction films?

Science fiction films are more interesting than thrillers.

3. Which films are scarier, horror films or thrillers? Horror films are scarier than thritlers.

4. Which films are more exciting, comedies or thrillers? Thrillers are more exciting than comedies.

3. western

2. comedy

Exercise 7

A

play listen to watch the plane iazz videos the guitar music TV the trumpet CDs a film

Answers will yarv.

Exercise 8

- 1. Then and Now
- 2. A Question of \$1 Million
- The Best Man Wins

8

1. science fiction Exercise 9

2. A: Do you like gospel music?

B: Lcan't stand it.

A: There's a baseball game tonight.

B: Great Let's oo

4. A: What do you think of Tina Turner? 8: I'm not a real fan of hers.

Exercise 10

Δ

1. No 3. Yes 5. Yes 2. Yes 4. No

В

Answers will vary.

Exercise 11

KATE: Yes, I do. Llike it a lot.

ROBIN: There's a concert on Friday. Would you like to go with me?

KATE: Yes, I'd love to. Thanks.

2. CARLOS: Would you like to go to a French film at 11:00 tonight?

PHIL: I'd like to, but I have to study tonight.

CARLOS: Well, do you like Brazilian films?

PHIL: Yes, I do. I love them.

CARLOS: There's a great Brazilian movie on TV tomorrow. Would you like to watch it with me? PHIL: I'd love to. Thanks.

Exercise 12

- 2. Richard can't stand classical music.
- 3. I love horror films.
- She's not a fan of country music.
- 5. Would you like to go to a baseball game?

Unit 5

Tell me about your family.

Exercise 1

Male fernale brother aunt father dauchter husband mother nephew niece son sister uncle wife

Exercise 2

DON: No. I'm not. My brother and sister are staying with me right now We go to bed after midnight every

JOEL: Really? What are they doing this summer? Are

they taking classes, too?

DON: No, they aren't. My brother is on vacation now,

but he is looking for a part-time job here.

JOEL: What about your sister? Is she working? DON: Yes, she is. She has a part-time job at the university. What about you, Joel? Are you in school this summer?

JOEL: Yes, I am. I'm studving two languages.

DON: Oh, are you taking French and Spanish again? JOEL: Well, I'm taking Spanish again, but I'm starting Japanese.

DON: Really? That's exciting!

Exercise 3

- 2. Peter is Liz's husband.
- 3. I'm not married.
- 4. We have a son and (a) daughter.
- 5. My father-in-law is a painter.
- 6. Michael is looking for a job right now.

Exercise 4

CHRIS: Wow! Do you like it? PHILIP: Yes, I do. I like it a lot. -

CHRIS: And is your brother still working in Hong

Kona?

PHILIP: Yes. he is. He loves it.

CHRIS: And how about your parents? Are they still living in Florida?

PHILIP: No, they aren't. They're tiving in New York these days. How about you and your family. Chris? Are you still living here?

CHRIS: Yes, we are. We really love San Francisco.

Exercise 5

- This is my aunt Barbara. <u>She lives</u> in Rome, but <u>she's visiting</u> Chile this summer. <u>She has</u> a summer house there.
- And these are my parents. They work in London, but they're visiting my aunt in Chile this month.
- And here you can see my grandparents. They live in New York, but they're staying at my parents' house in London how.
- This is my brother-in-law, Fdward. He wants to be a company director. <u>He's studying</u> business in Canada right now.
- And this is my niece, Christina. <u>She goes or She's going</u> to high school. <u>She likes</u> mathematics, but she doesn't like English.
- 6. And you know this person, of course, it's me.

Exercise 6

Α

Answers will vary.

В

- False: Many college students live in university housing.
- 2. True
- False: Few young people in the United States live with their parents.
- False: Nearly all university students live with their parents.
- 5. True
- False: (Rents in the city are very expensive.) Many young people continue to live with their parents after they marry.

Exercise 7

- 1. all
- 2. nearly all
- 3. most
- 4. many
- 5. a lot of
- 6. some
- 7. not many
- 8. a few
- 9. few
- 10. nc

Exercise 8

- Many children start school before the age of 5.
 All children go to school after the age of five.
- Nearly all young people get a job after they finish high school.
 - Only a few go to cellege.
- Not many people over 65 have part-time jobs.
 Few people like to travel abroad.
 Many people over 65 like to stay with their grandchildren.

Exercise 9

In my country, some <u>couples</u> get married fairly young. Not many marriages <u>break up</u> and nearly all <u>divorced</u> people remarry.

Elderly couples often <u>live at home</u> and take care of their grandchildren.

Exercise 10

Answers will vary.

Unit 6

How often do you exercise?

Exercise 1

Team sports basketball baseball football

Individual sports swimming jogging bicycling tennis Exercise yoga swimming jogging aerobics bicycling tennis

Exercise 2

- They hardly ever play tennis.
- 3. How often do you go jogging?
- We often do yoga on Sunday mornings.
- 5. Does Charlie ever do aerobics?
- 6. What do you usually do on Saturdays?

Exercise 3

- A: What do you usually do?
 - B. Weil, I usually do karate on Saturdays and yoga on Sundays.
- 3. A: Do you ever go to the gym after work?
 - B: No. I never go to the gym after work.
- 4. A: How often do you exercise?
 - B: I don't exercise very often at all.
- A: <u>Do you ever play sports (on weekends)</u>?
 B: Yes, I sometimes play sports on weekends usually baseball.
- 6 A: What do you usually do in your free time?
 B: I usually play tennis in my free time.

Exercise 4

Δ

Answers will vary.

В

Answers will vary.

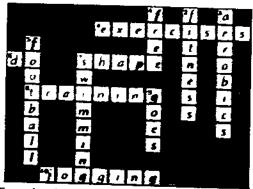
Exercise 5

JERRY: I always go jogging at seven o'clock. How about you, Susan?

SUSAN: I usually go jogging <u>around</u> noon. I jog <u>for</u> about an hour.

JERRY: And do you also play sports in your free time? SUSAN: Not very often, I usually go out with my classmates in my free time. What about you? JERRY: I go to the gym on Mondays and Wednesdays. And sometimes I go bicycling on

weekends. SUSAN: Wow! You really like to stay in shape.



Exercise 7 B

Charim atau	chub	Program	YMCA
Play in door sports			_
Do outdoor activities	-		
Take evening classes			
Go dancing		•	
Learn to cook			•
Meet new people		•	

Exercise 8

- A: How long do you spend in the swimming pool? B: About 45 minutes.
- A: And how well do you swm?
 B: I'm about average.
- 4. A: How good are you at other sports?
 - B: Not too good, actually
- A. How much time do you spend working out?
 Around an hour a day.

Exercise 9

- 2. A: How often do you go for a walk?
 - B: Almost every day, I really enjoy it.
- A: How much time do you spend jogging?
 or How long do you spend jogging?
 B: I spend about an hour jogging.
- 4. A How good are you at racquetball?
 - B: I'm pretty good at it. I'm on the school team.
- 5. A: How well do you play basketball?
- B: Basketball? Pretty well, I guess. I like it a lot.

Exercise 10

- 2. Tom doesn't exercise very often.
- Philip tries to stay in shape.
- 4. Jill often works out at the gym.
- 5. How much time do you spend at the gym?
- 6. How well do you play tennis?

Exercise 11

Answers will vary.

Unit 7

We had a great time!

Exercise 1

122

A

- 2. enjoyed 5 studied 8 washed 3 invited 6, thed 9, watched
- loved 7 viited
- В
- 2. give 3. meet 4, see 5 sleep
- 6 spend 7 take 8 go

C Answers will vary.

Exercise 2

- Who did you meet at the party?
 met someone very interesting
- What time did you and Eva get home?
 We got home 3 little after 1:00.
- 4. How did you and Bob like the art exhibition? We liked the art exhibition a lot.
- 5. What did you buy?
 - or We bought the new Madonna CD.
- 6. Where did Jeff and Joyce go on vacation? They went to the county (on vacation).

Exercise 3

Answers will vary.

Exercise 4

- A: What did you do? *
- B: Well, on Saturday, we went shopping.
- A: And did you do anything special in the evening?
- B: No, nothing special.
- A. Where did you go on Sunday?
- B. We went to the amusement park
- A. How did you like it?
- B: We had a great time. In fact, we stayed there all day
- A. Realty? What time did you get home?
- B: We got home very late, around midnight,"

Exercise 5

- A: I stayed home from work yesterday. Did you take the day off, too?
 - B: No, I didn't take the day or yesterday off, I worked all day until six objects.
- 3. A: I slept in all weekend. Did you spend the weekend at tome?
 - B: No, I dight spend the weekend at home, I went out with friends.
- 4. A: I studied all weekend. Did you and John have a lot of homework, too?
- 8: No, we didn't have a lot of homework. We inished our homework on Saturday
- 5. A: Carl drove me to work this morning. Did you drive to work?
 - B: No. I didn't drive to work, I took the bus
- 6. A: Kalhy went to the baseball game last night. Did you and Bob go to the game?
- B: No, we didn't go to the game. We watched it on TV

Exercise 6

- 2. d He took a day off.
- 3. a He did housework.
- c He didn't do laundry.
- 5. a He had people over.
- b He had a good time.

Exercise 7

A

Answers will vary.

	William	Sue
1, visited Thailand for the first time.	,	
2. stayed for two days in Bangkok		~
3. visited the floating market	1	~
4. bought food in Bangkok		1
S. saw some historic ruins		
6. book a trip on the river	1	
7, loved the lood the most	/	
8. enjoyed everything		-
Evareica 8		

Exercise 8

- B; It was great. I really enjoyed it.
- A: How long were you there?
- B: We were there for two weeks.
- A: Were you in Lima all the time?
- A: No, we weren't. We were in the mountains for a lew
- A: And how was the weather? Was it good?
- B: No, it wasn't good at all. The city was very hot, and the mountains were really cold!

Exercise 9

- B; it was a great trip, I really enjoyed South Africa and Namibia.
- A: How long were you in South Africa?
- B: For ten days.
- A: And how long were you in Namibia?
- B: I was in Namibia for about five days.
- A: Wow, that's a long time. How was the weather?
- B; it was not and sunny the whole time.
- A: And how did you like it?
- B: Oh, it was wonderful. And the wildlife was terrific we saw some meerkats!

Exercise 10

- 1. The neighbors had a noisy party till 3:00 A.M. We complained about it.
- We didn't see very much in the mountains. The weather was loggy.
- We went on a tour of the runs.
- 4. I worked very hard in Switzerland. I was there on DUSTNESS.

Exercise 11

Answers will vary.

Answers will vary.

Unit 8

How do you like the neighborhood?

Exercise 1

- dance ciub 3. gas station
- 6. pay phone
- 4. grocery store
- post office
- 5. movie theater
- shopping center
- 9 travel travel agency

- 2. A: We want to go dancing. Are there any dance clubs near here?
 - B: No, there aren't, but there are some or Main. Street
- A: I want to send this letter is there a post office. around bere?
- B: Yes, there's one next to the laundromat
- 4. A: I need to make a phone call. Are there any pay phones around here?
 - 8: Yes, there are some across from the library
- A; I need some gas. Are there any gas stations on this street?
 - B: No, there aren't, but there are a couple on Second Avenue.
- A: We need to make a reservation for a trip. <u>Is there</u> a travel agency near here?
 - B: Yes, there's one near the Sheraton Hotel

Exercise 2

Possible answers:

- There's a laundromation the corner of 1st Street and Oak in A, but there isn't one in B. There's a hospital.
- There's a grocery store on Elm Street in B, but there isn't one in A.
- There's a restaurant on the corner of 3rd Street and Oak in A, but there isn't one in B. There's a drugstore.
- 6. There's a bank on the comer of 2nd Street and Oak in A, but there isn't one in 8. There's a department
- 7. There's a post office on the corner of 3rd and Birch
- in A, but there isn't one in B. There's a movie theater 8. There's a supermarket on the corner of 2" and Elm
- in A fait there isn't one in B. 9. There are some houses on 3" Street in A, but there
- aren't any in B. There are some apartments. 10. There's a barber shop on 4th Street in A, but there isn't one in B. There's a coffee shop.

Exercise 3

Answers will vary. Possible answers

- Is there a post office near here?
- There's one on the corner of Birch Street and 3.4 Avenue.
- 3.1'm looking for a drugstore. There's one opposite the gas station.
- 4, is there a laundromat in this neighbor hood? There's one next to the YWCA.
- 5. is there a department store on Birch Street? There's one between the travel agency and the
- Are there any pay phones around here? There are some in front of the post office.

Exercise 4

Answers will vary.

Exercise 5

В

Downtown

Substitute

Advantages : near the shopping center near the bus station safe

Disadvantages very noisy streets full of people traffic is terrible

parking is a

a lot of parks good schools very little crime

big problem too quiet not many shops, no clubs or

theaters nothing ever reatly happens

Exercise 6

countable nouns building

uncountable noun

hank people hospital theater

traffic pollution noise gas

water

crime

Exercise 7

school

2. How many buses are there? There aren't any.

- 3. How much traffic is there? There's only a little.
- 4. How many banks are there? There are a couple.
- 5. How many people are there? There are a few.
- How much crime is there? There's a lot.

Exercise 8

ALEX: Sure. There are a lot. There's a great club across from the National Bank, but it's expensive. LUIS: Well, are there any others? ALEX: Yeah, there are a few. There's a nice one near here. It's called Sounds of Brazil, LUIS: That's perfect! Where is it exactly? ALEX: It's on Third Avenue, between the Royal Theater and May's Restaurant.

LUIS: So let's oo.

Exercise 9

- 1.I'm going to the stationery store to get some birthday
- 2. We're taking along drive. We need to go to the gas
- 3. I live on the 8th floor of my apartment building.
- Our apartment is in the center of the city. We live downtown.

Unit 9

What does he lank like?

Exercise 1

2. light 3. young 4. short 5. tall

Exercise 2

2. fairty long

good-looking medium height

middle-aged

2. A- How long is his hair?

B: It's fairly long.

3. A: What color is his hair?

8: It's dark brown. 4. A: How old is he?

B: He's middle aged. 5. A; How tall is he?

B: He's medium height.

Exercise 3

JiM: And how long is her hair? STEVE: It's medium length.

JIM: How tall is she? STEVE: She's fairly tall.

JIM: And how old is she?

STEVE: She's in her early twenties.

JIM: <u>Does she wear dasse</u>s

STEVE: Sometimes. I think she's wearing them now.

JIM: OK. I think I see her over there.

Exercise 4

Answers will vary.

Exercise 5

- 1. This man is in his late forties. He's pretty tall. He has a black mustache, and he's baid. He's wearing a dark shirt and jeans. He isn't bald. He has short. curly hair.
- This woman is about 25. She's very pretty. She's medium height. Her hair is long and blond. She's wearing a black sweater and tennis shoes. She's standing next to her motorcycle She isn't wearing tennis shoes. She's wearing boots. She isn't standing next to her motorcycle. She's sitting on her motorcycle.
- 3. This woman is in her early twenties. She's pretty serious looking. She has glasses and straight blond hair. She's fairly tall, and she's wearing a goodlooking skirt and blouse.

She doesn't have glasses. She doesn't have straight blond hair. She has curty black hair.

Exercise 6

Formai Casua/ blouse boots dress ieans

scarf shorts shirt running shoes

suit T-shirt tio cap

Exercise 7

- Edward and Kate are the ones wearing sunglasses.
- Mandy is the tall woman carrying a jacket.
- Alice is the woman talking to the man.
- Giorgio is the one standing next to Alice.

Exercise 8

Possible answers:

- 2. A. Which one is Carlos?
 - B: He's the one behind the couch.

- 3. A: Which ones are Dan and Cindy?
 - B: The ones next to Maria.
- 4. A: Which one is Angela?
 - B: She's the one on the couch.
- 5. A: Who's Kim?
 - B: He's the one with short black hair.

Exercise 9

- 2. A: Which ones are the teachers?
 - Who are the teachers?
- B They're the ones on the couch.

They're the ones sitting on the couch.

- 3. A: Which one is Larry?
 - Who is Larry?
 - B: He's the guy wearing the coat.
 - He's the guy in the coat.

Exercise 10

There's a good-looking middle-aged woman walking her dog, and a young guy talking on the phone. Two people are standing next to him. Hey! The one wearing a baseball hat is my classmate! Some people are waiting at the bus stop. A serious-looking woman is asking for directions. And hey, here comes a really cute woman carrying a backpack. Wait a minute! I know her. That's my old girlfriend. I have to go now! Bye.

Exercise 11

- 2. A: Who's Sam?
 - B: The handsome our near the door.
- 3. A: Is she the one on the couch?
 - B: That's night.
- 4. A: How tall is she?
 - B: Pretty short.

Unit 10

Have you over ridden a camel?

Exercise 1

- 2. a called
- 3. b done
- 4. j eaten
- 5. a gone
- 6. h had
- 7. Ljogged
- 8. g made 9. c seen
- a. L 3001
- 10, i tried

Exercise 2

- 2. A: Has she gone running lately?
 - B: Yes, she usually runs in the morning, and evening.
- A: <u>Have you eaten</u> at the new Brazilian restaurant?
 B: Yes, we've already eaten there, it's excellent, but very expensive.
- 4. A. How many times <u>have you gone</u> shopping at the mall this month?
 - B: Actually, I haven't gone at all. Let's go today! I hear there's a new music store there.
- 5. A: How many international phone calls <u>have you</u> made this week?
 - B: Only one on my father's birthday.

Exercise 3

Α

Answers will vary.

В

Answers will vary.

Exercise 4

Answers will vary.

Exercise 5

Α

Answers will vary.

C

1

- 1 stay in the mountains
- 2 lost a wallet
 - enjoyed the view
- <u>1 and 2</u> got no exercise 2 spent time on a boat
- waited for help
- 7 waited to their
- went swimming .
- 1 and 2 had a terrible day

Exercise 6

- A: Have you ever seen a sumo wrestling match?B: Actually, I saw a sumo wrestling match last
 - month on TV, it was terrific.
- A: Have you ever been camping?
 B: No. I halven't. I've never been camping.
- 4. A: Have you ever eaten oysters?
 - B: Yes, I have, I ale oysters last year in France.
- 5. A: Have you ever gone wall climbing?
 - B: Yes, I went wall climbing on Friday night.
- 6. A: Have you ever ridden a motorcycle?
 - B: Yes, I have. My brother once let me ride his motorcycle.
- 7. A: Have you ever been to India?
 - B: No, I've never been to India.
- 8, A; Have you ever had a bad dream?
 - B: Yes, I had a bad dream just last night.

Exercise 7

Answers will vary.

Exercise 8

- B: Yes, I lost my watch last month.
- A: Have you found it yet?
- B: No. Actually, I've already bought a new one. Look!
- A: Oh, that's nice. Where did you buy it?
- B: I got it at the street market last weekends. What about you? Have you ever lost anything valuable?
- A: Well, I left my address book in a pay phone a couple of months ago.
- A: How annoying! Maybe that's why you haven t called me for a white.
- A: That's right I can't remember my own phone number! But you haven't called me in a long time. What's your excuse?
- B; I told you, I lost my watch, so I haven't had the time!
- A: Very funny!

Exercise 9

- 2. A: Are you having a good time?
 - B: Really good.
- 3. A: How many times has he seen the show?
 - B: Twice.
- 4. A: What about a tour of the city?
 - B: Sure, I hear it's oreat.

Unit 11

It's avery exciting city!

Exercise 1

- My hometown is not an exciting place. The nightlife there is pretty <u>boring</u>.
- Rome is a beautiful old city.
 There are not many modern buildings.
- Some parts of this city are fairly dangerous.
 They're not very <u>safe</u> late at night.
- Athens is a very quiet city in the winter.
 The streets are never <u>provided</u> at that time of the year.

Exercise 2

- A: What's your hometown like?
- B: My hometown? Oh, it's a pretty nice place.
- A: Is it big?
- B No, it's fairly small, and it has a lot of beautiful buildings.
- A: What's the weather like?
- B: The winter is wet and too cold, it's very nice in the summer, though.
- A: ts the nightlife exciting?
- B: No! It's really boring after sox o'clock in the evening.

Exercise 3

- Prague is a very nice place. The winters are termbly cold. though.
- Sydney is a relaxing city, and it has a wonderful harbor.
- My hometown is a great place for a vacation, <u>but</u> it's not too good for shopping.
- Our hometown is fauly ugly and dirty, It has some beautiful old houses, however.

Exercise 4

- Restaurants are very cheap in Mexico.
- Copenhagen is a clean city.
- 4. The buildings in Paris are really beautiful.
- 5. Apartments are very expensive in Hong Kong.
- 6. Amsterdam is a fairly crowded city in the summer.
- 7 Toronto has good museums.
- 8. Rio is an exciting place to visit.

Exercise 5

Travel Britain

London <u>is</u> Britain's biggest city. It <u>has</u> a very old capital and dates back to the Romans. It <u>is</u> a city of interesting buildings and churches, and it <u>has</u> many beautiful parks. It also <u>has</u> some of the best museums in the world. London <u>is</u> very crowded in the summer, but it <u>is</u> not too busy in the winter It <u>is</u> a popular city with foreign tourists and <u>has</u> more than eight million visitors a year. The city <u>is</u> tamous for its shopping and <u>has</u> many excellent department stores. London <u>has</u> convenient trains and buses that cross the city, so it <u>is</u> easy for tourists to get around.

Exercise 6

В

City Budapest	Date found 1872	Population 3 million	Weather very cold in the winter	Tourist attractions the Danube nightlife
Los Angeles	1781	3.5 million	smoggy dry and warm	film studios Hioliywood Boulevard beaches Disneyland
Taipei	18* century	2.3 million	humid not pleasant	museum shopping

С

- 2. Los Angeles has good beaches nearby
- 3. Budapest was once two cities.
- Budapest and Taipei are both capital cross

Exercise 7

- 2. You shouldn't stay near the airport. It's too noisy
- You shouldn't miss the museum. If has some new exhibits.
- 4. You can take a bus tour of the city if you like
- You shouldn't walk alone at night. It's too dangerous
- 6. You should travel by taxi if you're out late

Exercise 8

- B: You shouldn't miss Jogiakarta, the old capital city.
 There are a lot of beautiful old buildings. For example, you should see the temple of Borobudur.
- A. Sounds great. Bali is very popular, too. <u>Should I go</u> there?
- B Yes, you should it's very interesting.
- A Should I take a lot of money with me?
- B. No, you <u>shouldn't</u>. Indonesia is not an expensive country.
- A: So when should I go there?
- B: Well, it's always hot and humid, so it really doesn't matter.

Exercise 9

Possible questions:

- 2. What can you see and do there?
- 3. What shouldn't you do there?
- 4. What special foods should you try?
- 5. What should you buy there?
- 6. What other interesting things can you do?

Exercise 10

- 2. The streets are always crowd.
- It's a fairly ugty city.
- 4. What's a good time to visit the city?
- You really shouldn't miss the flea markets
- 6. What should we do there?

Unit 12

It really works!

Exercise 1

A

Suggested answers.

- 2. a headache: take some aspinn
- 3. a bad cold; go to bed and rest

- 4, an insect bite: put anti-itch cresm on it
- the hiccups: dnnk lots of hot water

В

Possible answers

- 2. A: What should you do for a headache?
 - B: It's useful to take some aspirin
- 3. A: What should you do for a bad cold?
 - B; It's important to go to bed and rest.
- 4. A: What should you do for an insect bite? B: It's a good idea to put anti-itch cream on it.
- 5. A: What should you do for the hiccups?
 - B: It's helpful to drink lots of hot water.

Exercise 2

Possible answers

- 2. For a sore throat, it's a good idea not totalk too
- For a burn, it's important not to put ice on it.
- For insomnia, it's helpful not to drink coffee at night.
- For a lever, it's important not to get out of bed.

Exercise 3

Answers will vary

Exercise 4

А

Answers will vary

- 3. True 2 False 1. Faise
- 4. True 7. True 8. True 5. Faise 6. True

Exercise 5

Tube Can Bottle Box ointment insect stray cough drops eve drops sunburn spray сяват tissues odis R

Possible answers:

- Mary has a bad cold.
 - She should buy a box of tissues.
- Andrew and Carlos have a lot of insect bites. They should buy, a can of insect spray.
- 4. David has dry lon.

He should buy a tube of cream.

Exercise 6

- 1. CUSTOMER: Yes, Can I have a package of
 - PHARMACIST: Here you are.

CUSTOMER: And what do you have for a sunburn? PHARMACIST, I suggest this lotion.

CUSTOMER: Thanks.

2 PHARMACIST: Hi, Can t help you?

CUSTOMER: Yes, Could I have something for sore muscles?

PHARMACIST: Sure. Try this ointment.

CUSTOMER: Thanks. And what do you suggest for

PHARMACIST: Try some of these tablets. They really work.

CUSTOMER: OK; thanks, I'll take them. And could? have a box of tissues?

PHARMACIST: Sure, Here you are.

Exercise 7

A: Wow, you don't look very good! Do you feel OK? B: No, I think I'm getting a cold. What should I do for it?

- A: You should stay at home and go to bed
- B: You're probably right, tive go a really, bad cough
- A: Try dinnking some not tea with honey, it really helps
- B: Anything else?
- A: Yeah, I suggest you get a big box of tissues!

Exercise 8

Possible answers

- I think I'm getting a cold. You should stet a bottle of vitamin C
- I have a backache. And don't tell me to go to bed'. i suggest a heating pad.
- 4, I have a terrible stomachache. Try some antacid.

Unit 13

May I take your order, piease!

Exercise 1

- 2. Sa do 1.
- 3 Jam too
- 4 Neither do I.
- 5. I don't either.
- 6, i do, too.

Exercise 2

Answers will vary.

Answers will vary.

Exercise 3

Answers will vary.

ī.	tona Armana	Dynasty	Beinst Cafe	
Food	ttalian	American	Lebanese	
Atmosphere	quiet and retaking	boding	tively	
Specialties	desserts	steak and potatoes	meze	
Service	very good	slow and unitiently	very friendly	
Price/person	about \$25	\$22	adout \$18	
Reservation	yes	no	yes .	

Exercise 4

Kale's Diner

tea

Main Dishes (includes salad and choice

of Potatoes) grilled salmon roast beef

turkey sandwich Soups

chicken noodle soup French onion soup clam chowder

Beverages coffee

Salads

chicken salad p<u>asta</u> salad mixed greens

Desserts

chocolate cake apple pie ice cream

Exercise 5

WAITER: What kind of dressing would you like on your salad - French, Italian or vinaigrette?

CUSTOMER: Franch, please.

WAITER: And would you like anything to drink?

CUSTOMER: Yes. []] have iced coffee.

WAITER: Anything else? CUSTOMER: No. thanks.

Exercise 6

- 2. A: What kind of soda would you like?
 - B: I'll have a cola.
- 3. A: Would you like anything to drink?
 - B: No. thanks.
- 4. A: What flavor ice cream would you like?
 - B: <u>Vanilla, piease</u>.
- 5. A: Would you like anything else?
 - B: That will be all thanks.

Exercise 7

SHERRY: It's delicious, I like it a lot.

WHITNEY: I do, too. It's my favorite kind of food. Let's call Chiang Mai restaurant for home delivery.

SHERRY: Great idea! Their food is always good. I eat

WHITNEY: So do I. Well, what would you like tonight? SHERRY: I'm in the mood for some soup.

WHITNEY: So am I. And I think I will have spicy chicken and special That rice.

SHERRY: OK, let's order. Oh, wait a minute, I don't have any money

WHITNEY: Neither do I. What should we do?

SHERRY: Well, let's look in the refrigerator, Hmm. Do you like boiled eggs?

WHITNEY: I can't stand them. SHERRY: Actually, neither can I.

Exercise 8

- Baked potatoes are less greasy than french fries.
- Many people like <u>dressing</u> on their salad.
- Some people rarely cook with spices. They prefer bland lood.
- Vanilla is a popular ice-cream flavor.

Unit 14

The biggest and the best

Exercise 1

- 2. b forest
- 3. c swamp
- 4. a lake
- S. c volcano
- 6. a desert
- **a**·
- Amazon River
- Lake Superior
- 4. Mount Fuji
- S. Mediterranean Sea
- 6. Niagara Falts
- Pacific Ocean
- 8. Sahara Desert

Exercise 2

 cooler friendlier heavier 	the coolest	7 older	the oldest
	the friendliest	8. safer	the safest
	the heaviest	9. smaller	the smallest
5. nicer 6. noisier	the nicest		the wettest

Exercise 3

IAN: Well, it certainly has some of the most famous cities in the world - Rome, Milan, Venice,

VAL: Yeah, I had the best time in Venice, it's the most beautiful city I've ever seen. Of course, it's also one of the most popular tourist attractions, it was the most crowded city I visited this summer, and there weren't even any cars!

IAN: I've always wanted to visit Venice. What's it like in the winter?

VAL: Actually, that's the worst time to visit. Venice is one of the coldest and foociest places in Italy in the winter.

Exercise 4

- 3. The highest waterfall in the world is in Venezuela.
- The Suez Canal joins the Mediterranean and Red seas. It is 190 kilometers (118 miles) long. It is <u>longer</u> than the Panama Canai
- 5. The Atacama Desert in Chile is the direct place in the world.
- Mount Waialeale in Hawaii gets 1,170 centimeters: (460 inches) of rain a year, it is the wettest place on
- The hottest capital city in the world is Muscat, in Oman.
- 8. The continent of Antarctica is colder than any other place in the world.
- The Himalayas are some of the most dangerous mountains to climb.
- 10. Badwater, in California's Death Valley, is the lowest point in North America.
- 11. Mont Blanc in the French Alps is higher than the Matternom in the Swiss Alps.
- 12. The Pacific Ocean is deeper than the Atlantic Ocean, in some places the Pacific Ocean is 11,033 meters (36,198 feet) deep.

Exercise 5

Α

Answers will vary.

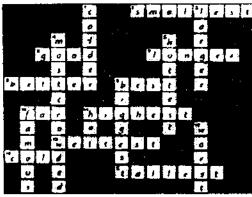
1. False 3. True 5. False

2. False 4. False 6. False

Exercise 6

- 2. How far is New Zealand from Australia? a. It's about 2,000 kilometers (1,200 miles).
- 3. How long is the Amazon River?
- a. It's 6,437 kilometers (4,000 miles) long.
- 4. How cold is Antarctica?
 - b. It gets down to minus 88.3 degrees Cetsius.
- 5. How big is the Amazon Rain Forest?
 - a. It's 6 million square kilometers (21 million r , les)
- 6. How deep is the Grand Canyon?
 - b. It's about 1.6 kilometers deep.

Exercise 7



Unit 15

I'm going to see a musical.

Exercise 1

have a beach party a barbeque

a play a rock concert

visit an amusement park a museum watch

a baligame on TV a video

Exercise 2

Possible answers:

2. On Monday, she's working overtime to finish the

 On Tuesday evening at 7:00, she's seeing a play with Tony.

 On Wednesday night, she's watching the hockey game with Kate and Sam.

One Thursday, she's having a barbecue at noon.

On Friday, she's staying home and watching the late show on TV.

On Saturday afternoon, she's going to an arts featival.

Exercise 3

MARK: I'm going to go to an art gallery on Saturday MARTA: That sounds interesting.

MARK: Yeah, There's a new exhibit at the Modern. And how about you, Marta?

MARTA: Well, Brian and I are going to see a ballgame in the afternoon.

MARK: And what are you <u>coing to do</u> in the evening? MARTA: Brian's <u>going to visit</u> his mother in the hospital. But I'm not <u>going to do</u> anything really. MARK: Well, <u>I'm going to have</u> some friends over for a barbeque. Would you like to come?

MARTA: Thanks. I'd love to.

Exercise 4

2. A: Do you want to visit the street fair with us tomorrow?

B: Sure, I'd love to.

A; We're having friends over for dinner tonight. Would you like to come?

B: I'm working late tonight, I'm sorry

4. A: How about dinner at the Mexican restaurant tonight?

B: Great! But it's my turn to pay.

Exercise 5

Answers will vary.

Exercise 6

Answers will vary.

Exercise 7

Λ

Answers will vary.

В

Answers will vary.

С

1. True

False: It is possible to send letters and reports by faxing them over telephone lines.

3. True

4. Faise: You can carry a cellular phone in your pocket.

Faise: Now you can take your calls with you every where.

Exercise 8

Possible answers:

1. Please ask her to bring the last fax from New York.

Could you tell Mr. Alvarez that we need the report by noon? Please ask him to call Ms. James as soon as possible.

3. Would you tell Dr. James that the new tax machine is ready? Could you tell her to pick it up this afternoon?

Exercise 9

Possible answers:

 Please ask Michael not to meet me at the airport until midnight. Would you tell him that the plane is going to be late?

2. Please tell Lucy that we're meeting at Dino's house before the concert. Could you ask her not to lorget the tickets?

Could you tell Christopher that the beach party starts at noon. Please ask him not to be late.

Exercise 10

SECRETARY: I'm <u>sorry</u>. She's not in. <u>Can I take a</u> message?

MS. CURTIS: Yes, please. This is Ms. Curtis. Would you tell her that I'm staying at the Plaza Hotel? The number is 735-9001, Room 605. Could you tell her to call me?

SECRETARY: OK, Ms. Curtis. I'll 'give her the message.

MS, CURTIS: Thank you very much. Goodbye.

Exercise 11

Could I ask her to call you back? Yes, My number is 669-3241.

3. Who's calling?

My name's Graham, Graham Lock,

4. Can I take a message?

Yes, please. Could you tell him Ros called?

Could I speak to Paul, please?
 Let me see if he's in.

I'm sorry, She's busy at the moment. That's OK, I'll call back.

Unit 16

A changge for the better!

Exercise 1

- 2 A: I haven't seen you for ages B: I know. How have you been?
- 3. A: You know, I have three kids now.
 - B: That's terrific!
- 4. A: How are you?
 - B: I'm doing really well.

Exercise 2

- Kim and Anna have stopped eating out in restaurants. Now they cook dinner at home every evening. It's much cheaper.
- 3 Alex's started going to the gym. He looks healthier, and he has more energy.
- Jerry's spent a lot of money on clothes. He needs to dress up for his new job.

Exercise 3

Answers will vary, Possible answers:

- Susan doesn't smoke anymore, or Susan smoked a tol
- Elena doesn't wear glasses now. She looks better than before. or Elena wore glasses before

Exercise 4

Possible answers:

- 2. James was heavier before.
- Mary has changed schools.
- 4. Tess is divorced.
- 5. My hair is longer
- We quit smolging.

Exercise 5

Α

Answers will vary.

В

1. Aki <u>c</u>

Now I actually look forward to getting up early. I dress up now.

My hair is shorter.

2. Luis <u>a</u>

I got married!

My wife and I often have friends for dinner. We're taking evening classes.

3. Rosie b

Now I work as a computer programmer. I've gained several kilos. I feet much happier and healthier.

Exercise 6

- Marie lost her job. Now she's broke, and she can't pay her rent.
- Now that I'm going to college, I want to be more responsible about doing my classwork.
- Lucy wants to pay off her student loan before she buys a car.
- Philip plans to retire at an early age. He's almost 55 now.
- I'd like to be successful in my first job. Then I can get a better job and a raise.

Appendix

COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

This is a partial list of countries, many of which are presented in this book.

Argentina Argentine Australia Australian Austria Austrian Brazil Brazilian Bolivia Bolivian Canada Canadian Chile Chilean China Chinese Colombia Colombian Costa Rica Costa Rican Econdor Ecuadorian Egypt Egyptian England English France French

Germany German Greece Greek Hungary Hungarian Indian India Indonesian Indonesia Izeland Irish Italian Italy Japan Japanese Kores Korean Lebenon Lebanese Malaysian Malaysia Mexico Mexican Moroccan Morocco New Zealand New Zealander

Filipino the Philippines Poland Polish Russia Russian Singapore Singaporean Spanish Spain Switzerland Swim Theiland Thai Turkey Turkish Peru Peruvian the United Kingdom British the United States American Uruguay Uruguayan

NUMBERS

0	1	2	3	4 .	5	6	7	eight.
tero	one	two	Uhree	four	five	ex	seven	
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
1110e	ten	eleven	twelve	thirteen	fourteen	fifteen	sixteen	seventeen
18	19	20	21	22	30	40	50	60
eighteen	nineteen	twenty	twenty-one	t wenty two	thirty	furty	fifty	sixty
70 seventy	80 eighty	90 ninety	one h	100 andred (a har	adred)	one to	1,000 rousand (a th	ousand)

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

big	dirty	high	ald	أأها
busy	dry	bot	protty	ugly
chesp	easy	lurge	quiet	W2(10)
clean	fast	light	aa fe	wet.
close	friendly	loung	SCREY	young
cold	funny	mild	short	
cool	great	Dew	slow	
deco	beavy	nice	gmall	

attractive beautiful boring crowded dangerous delicious	exciting expensive famous important interesting	outgoing popular relaxing stressful difficult
3. Irregular a		

PRONUNCIATION OF REGULAR PAST FORMS

with /d/ studied stayed

with M worked watched

· with /td/ invited visited

IRREGULAR VERBS

Present Past **Participle** (be) am/is, are WEA, Were Descuis bring brought brought buy bought bought come CEITIG COME: cut cut cu4 do did dene drink drank drank drive drove driven est ate ester fly flew Corre fall fel! fellen feet feit feit. get got gutten give gave given ZΩ went gune PEOW grew £F0wn have had þad hear heard beard keep kept kept lose lost

Present make meet put quit read ride auri 30E المد **set** 412 علوهم speak spend take teach teil think WALL Write

met met. put out quit quit read read mia. ridden ran 7UN **GRAP** asen sold sold net. aet mat sat slept alept spoke spoken epent spent took taken taught taught told told thought thought WOLE ₩(XX) wrote written

Participle.

made

Past

made

ANSWER KEY Unit 14, Exercise 3, page 87

- 1. Vatican City
- 2. Angel Falls
- 3. Hong Kong
- 4. the Caspian See
- 5. Mount Everest
- 6. the Nile
- 7. France
- 8. the Pacific Ocean
- (.44 square kilometers/.17 square miles)
- (979 meters/3,212 feet)
- (247,501 people per square mile)
- (378,400 square kilometers/146,10) square miles)
- (8,848 meters/29,008 feet)
- (6,670 kilometers/4,145 miles)
- (60 million tourists)
- (average depth of 4,028 meters/13,215 feet)

ANSWER KEY Interchange 14, page 132

- 1. gold
- 2. Pluto (temperature = -230°C/-382°F)
- 3. Jupiter (diameter =142,984 km/88,846 miles)
- 4. a tortoise (maximum age = 150 years)
- 5. a giraffe (height = 5.5 meters/18 feet)
- 6. the liver (weight = 1,560 grams/55 ounces)
- 7. I liter of wine
- 8. Egypt (rainfall = 100-200 mm/4-8 inches)
- 9. Colombia (The equator runs through Colombia.)
- 10. an octagon (An octagon has 8 sides.)
- 11. a mile (1 mile = 1,760 yards = 1.6 kilos
- 12. the Dark Ages (from around 500-1,000 A.D.)

Acknowledgments

ILLUSTRATIONS

urbeum Griffiel 15 (top), 17 (top), 18, 59 Randy Josep 6 (10p), 9, 23, 29, 37 (10p), 36 46 (top), 47, 52, 53, 54, 56, 63, 66, 75 (top), 80. 86, 86, 94, 100, 194, IC-4 and IC-5 (hottom). IC-16, IC-90

am. 74, 75 (bottom), 76, 83 (top), 84, IC-4 (top five items), IC-6 (top five items) Kavin Specialiting 3 (bottom), 4, 5 (bottom), 14, 15 (bottom), 28, 37 (buttom), 48, 66, 67, 60, 72 (bottom), 76 (buttom), 79, 92, 98, 166, IC-12, IC-14, IC-17, IC-18

Siena Vivincia 2, 2 (top), 11, 17 (battom), 26, 27, 31, 36, 46, 46 (battom), 81, 64, 72 (top), 72, 78 (top), 83 (hottom). 89. 97. 99, IC-2. IC-3. IC-6, IC-18

PHOTOGRAPHIC CREDITS

8 (left to right) O Jan Rilay/Tony Stone Images; O SuperStock; O Bruce Byers/FPG International; © Dunnia Haltinun/PPG International: O Michael Krasowstr/FPG International; C Bruce Ayres/Tuny Stone

18 C Pup Chalfest/The Image Bank 11 O James Levis/PPG lateractional 12 C Jou Riley/Teny Stone Images 15 (left to right) O Mary Knin Denoy/PhotoEdit; @ Peter Corn ages; O Jeffrey Sylventer/PPG

16 (top row, left to right! Courtesy of IBM Corporation; courtery of Kmart Corporation surtesy of Kasart Corporation; courtery of SWATCH: (bottom row, left to right) courtesy of IBM Corporation; Jeans by GUESS, photo O Kichard Bachmann; courteny of Recbok; courtesy of Kmart Corporation 19 (left to right) © Michael Keller/The Stat

Market; O Ed Both/The Stock Market; O Cybershop 21 (top) O Christian Dec

es C Alpha/Globe Photos 22 (clockwise from top) O Fitzray Berrotti Gioba Photos; O Alpha Globe Photos; O Paramount Pictures/Globs Photos 23 A scene from The Phantom of the Opera, otograph © Clive Barda

25 (Bonnie Raitt) O Alvin Henr ninus; (Cui Jian) D Forrest Anderson) Commo Linison; (Corton, Valon, performin at SummerStage in Central Park) O Robert L. Smith

27 C Randy Manustripternstronal Stock 29 (laft to right) & Adam Sco'l/Globe Photos, O Bob V. Noble-Globe Photos: C Andrea Remault/Globe Photos; OR. Henry McGor Globe Photos; © Imapresa/Globe Photos; O Michael Ferguson/Globe Photo 20 C Chuck Kaba Photography/The Ima

22 O Jim Commins/PFC International 22 © Rob Gage/FPG International 26 O Donna Day/Teny Stone Images

26 © Paul Loven/The Image Hank 30 C Kevin Horan/Tony Stone Im-41 C Michael Kaller/The Stuck Market 42 O Peter Ginter/The Image Bank 48 (ex.8. top) @ Gary Irving/Teny St. langes; (es. 4. bottom) O bliroyuhi Matmaneto/Teny Stone Images; (es. 9, clocknise from topi O Zeynep Sumen/Teny Stone Images; O Ed Protcherd/Tony State [enges; O Joe Cornish/Tony Stone Images 44 C Chief Hallani ck/Yony Stone Imag 48 (top to bottom) © Matthew Weinreb/The Image Bank; O Wayne H. Chaous/The Issa Bank; O Joseph Van Op/The Israge Bank 48 O Schmid-Langsfold/The Israge Bank 86 € Ron Chapple/FPC Internation 51 C Jose Fuste Suga/The Stock Market \$7 (left to right) @ Springer/Carbin-Betts O Helmut Gritacher/PPG International; © Paramount/The Kohel Collection 66 (left to right) © Alain Evened/Garama Lasinon; © Globe Photon; © Paul McKelvey/

82 O Alpha Globe Photos 84 O Denn Coffey The Image Bank 95 (top to hottom) O Elan Sun Stan Teny Stone Images: © David Madison/Teny St ages, & Durryl Torchier/Tony Sto

Tony Stone Imagne; © Abreis Orand/Gassma

66 C Richard Simpson/Tony St. 67 (left to right) © Chip Vinni/Genetic Linium; © Perter Giffer#Genetic Linium; O Sylvain Grandadaza/Torre Stone Lo-sere: O Tony Stone Inches

66 O.J. Blank/H. Aroustroog Roberts (top) © Don Klumpp/The Image Bank; (betton) © Paulides/Toutcher/Tony Stone

70 (left) O Paul Chusley/Tony Stone Images; (right) O Glen Alticon/Teny Bloom Images 71 (left to right) © George Hunter H Armetroog Boburts; O Travelpis/FPG international; © Will & Duni McIntyre/Tony Stone Images

74 O Richard Backmano \$1 (left to right) O Tony Stone Images; C Leurence Dutton/Tony Stame Imag O Luis Costanede, Inc/The Image Bank; O James Jackson/Tony Stone Images, C Alberta Incrucci/The Image Bank; C Kenneth Mangay/Gamma Linison: © Birkard Barkmann

85 (left to right) O Paul Barton/The Stock Market: © Ren Chapple/FPG international; © Paul Berton/The Stock Market; © Ros Chapple/FPG International #7 O Staphen Prink/Tony Blos 86 O.R. Kord/H. Armstrong Roberts 99 O Chad Ehlers/Tony Stone Imag

93 (top rese, left to right) © Ed Pritchurd/Teny Stace Images ; © Ariel Shelley/The Stack Market; C Stephen Simpson/FPG International; O Mug Shote/The Stock

Bachmana; courtery of Philips liighting Company; O Kavin Laubacher/FPG interrutional; courtesy of Nagara Conservation Corporation 101 (top to bettom) C SuperStack; O Tom Wilson/FPG Interactional: O Nichael Keller/The Stock Market; O L.O.L. Inc./PPC 102 C Eddie Adeass/The Stock Market 100 (left av right) PEOPLE Weekly O 1996 Frank Veroesky; O Ted Rice; O Rd Hill/The Bergen Record, Hackmarch, NJ

Market; (button row, left to right! O Richard

164 C Travelpin/PPG International IC-7 (left to right) © Chuck Massor International Block; © Stephen Simpson/FPU International O Michael Krasovits/PTG IC-9 (top rom, left to right) C Cliff Hollenberh/International Stock; © Bruce Byere/FPG International; © Cliff Hollenbeck/

International Stock; (buttom row, left) & Cliff Hollenberk/International Stock (buttom rou ngat) O Cathlyn Melloun/Tony Stone Images IC-18 (top row, left to right) O Telegraph Colour Library/FPG International; O Derryt Torckles/Tong Stone Images; (buttom row. left to right) O Telegraph Colour Library/FPG International; O Josef Bock/PC International; D Hugh Sitter/Tooy Stone

IC-13 (Ief) O John Terrance Turner/FPG International; tright to Bruce Ayres/Tony Stone Impace IC-11 O Vers R. Storman/Tony Stone Insuga-

TEXT CREDITS

The authors and publishers are grateful for permission to reprint the following items

41 Adapted from "Smart Moves," by Susan Brink, U.S. News and World Suport, May 16, 1996, page 76. 48 (Snapsket) Reprinted from the September

1994 same of MONEY by apocal permusion; copyright 1994, Time Inc **87 Ariapted from Stephanie Winston's Best**

Organizing Tips, by Stephanse Winston. Siznou & Schueter, 1996

163 (Balamurati Krishna Ambuni Adapted from 'Producy, 12, Pughts Skeptics, Hoping, by Alexandra Stanley, New York Times, May 7, 1990, pages Al. BB. Copyright © 1990 by The New York Times Co. Reprinted by permission. (Catherine Charlton) Adapted from The Top Ten College Winners." Glamour, October 1994, Vol. 92, No. 10, page) 18. (Jasmia Sethi) Adapted from "Blind Student Aces SAT," by Paul J. Tourney, The Bergen Record (Hackensock, NJ), November 20, 1995.

IC-7 Adapted from "Lifystyle Quiz," by Linda Henry, Muncle & Pitness, September 1994. pages 230-231. Reprinted with permission.

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản

Giám đốc:

PHÙNG QUỐC BẢO

Tổng biên tập: NGUYỄN THIỆN GIÁP

Biển tập và sửa bản in: VÂN HÀ

> Trình bày bìa: QUỲNH MAI

NEW INTERCHANGE 1

Mã số: 02.34.ĐL 2003 In 1000 cuốn tại Nhà in Khoa học Công nghệ Số xuất bản: 90/120/CXB. Số trích ngang 112 KH/XR In xong và nộp lưu chiểu quý II năm 2003.

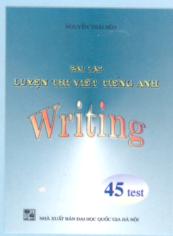
MỜI BẠN TÌM ĐỌC



















Giá: 22.000